GS2200-48

Intelligent Layer 2 Switch

User's Guide

Default Login Details

IP Address	http://192.168.0.1 (Out-of-band **MGMT** port)
	http://192.168.1.1 (In-band ports)
User Name	admin
Password	1234

Firmware Version 3.80
Edition 1, 7/2009

www.zyxel.com

ZyXEL

Copyright © 2009
ZyXEL Communications Corporation

About This User's Guide

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for people who want to configure the Switch using the web configurator or via commands.

Related Documentation

- Web Configurator Online Help

  Embedded web help for descriptions of individual screens and supplementary information.

- Command Reference Guide

  The Command Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) and CLI commands to configure the Switch.

Note: It is recommended you use the web configurator to configure the Switch.

- Supporting Disc

  Refer to the included CD for support documents.

- ZyXEL Web Site

  Please refer to www.zyxel.com for additional support documentation and product certifications.

Documentation Feedback

Send your comments, questions or suggestions to: techwriters@zyxel.com.tw

Thank you!

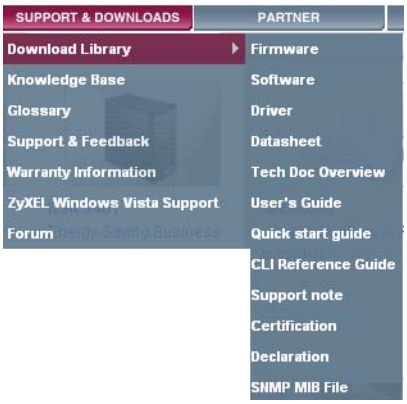
The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp.,
6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 30099, Taiwan.

Disclaimer

Graphics in this book may differ slightly from the product due to differences in operating systems, operating system versions, or if you installed updated firmware/software for your device. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Need More Help?

More help is available at www.zyxel.com.



- Download Library

  Search for the latest product updates and documentation from this link. Read the Tech Doc Overview to find out how to efficiently use the User Guide, Quick Start Guide and Command Line Interface Reference Guide in order to better understand how to use your product.

- Knowledge Base

  If you have a specific question about your product, the answer may be here. This is a collection of answers to previously asked questions about ZyXEL products.

- Forum

  This contains discussions on ZyXEL products. Learn from others who use ZyXEL products and share your experiences as well.

Customer Support

Should problems arise that cannot be solved by the methods listed above, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a ZyXEL office for the region in which you bought the device.

See http://www.zyxel.com/web/contact_us.php for contact information. Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Document Conventions

Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this User's Guide.

Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.

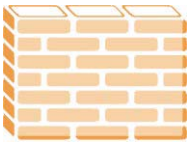
Note: Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

Syntax Conventions

- The GS2200-48 may be referred to as the "Switch", the "device", the "system" or the "product" in this User's Guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A key stroke is denoted by square brackets and uppercase text, for example, [ENTER] means the "enter" or "return" key on your keyboard.
- "Enter" means for you to type one or more characters and then press the [ENTER] key. "Select" or "choose" means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- A right angle bracket (>) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Maintenance > Log > Log Setting** means you first click **Maintenance** in the navigation panel, then the **Log** sub menu and finally the **Log Setting** tab to get to that screen.
- Units of measurement may denote the "metric" value or the "scientific" value. For example, "k" for kilo may denote "1000" or "1024", "M" for mega may denote "1000000" or "1048576" and so on.

Icons Used in Figures

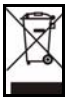
Figures in this User's Guide may use the following generic icons. The Switch icon is not an exact representation of your device.

The Switch	Computer	Notebook computer
Server	DSLAM	Firewall 
Telephone	Switch	Router

Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- For continued protection against risk of fire replace only with same type and rating of fuse.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the device and the power source.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.

Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.



Contents Overview

Introduction 21

Getting to Know Your Switch 23
Hardware Installation and Connection 29
Hardware Overview 33

Basic Configuration 39

The Web Configurator 41
Initial Setup Example 51
System Status and Port Statistics 57
Basic Setting 63

Advanced Setup 77

VLAN 79
Static MAC Forward Setup 99
Filtering 103
Spanning Tree Protocol 105
Bandwidth Control 123
Broadcast Storm Control 127
Mirroring 129
Link Aggregation 131
Port Authentication 139
Port Security 145
Classifier 149
Policy Rule 157
Queuing Method 165
VLAN Stacking 169
Multicast 175
Authentication & Accounting 191
IP Source Guard 205
Loop Guard 231

IP Application 235

Static Routing 237
RIP 239
Differentiated Services 241
DHCP 249
VRRP 259

Management 269

Maintenance 271
Access Control 279
Diagnostic 299
Syslog 301
Cluster Management 305
MAC Table 313
IP Table 317
ARP Table 321
Routing Table 323
Configure Clone 325

Product Specifications 327

Product Specifications 329

Appendices and Index 337

Table of Contents

About This User's Guide 3

Document Conventions 5

Safety Warnings 7

Contents Overview 9

Table of Contents 11

Part I: Introduction 21

Chapter 1
Getting to Know Your Switch 23

1.1 Introduction 23
1.1.1 Bridging Example 23
1.1.2 High Performance Switching Example 24
1.1.3 Gigabit Ethernet to the Desktop 25
1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Example 25
1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch 26
1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch 26

Chapter 2
Hardware Installation and Connection 29

2.1 Freestanding Installation 29
2.2 Mounting the Switch on a Rack 30
2.2.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements 30
2.2.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch 30
2.2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack 31

Chapter 3
Hardware Overview 33

3.1 Front Panel Connections 33
3.1.1 1000Base-T Ports 34
3.1.2 Dual Personality Interfaces 34
3.1.3 Mini-GBIC Slots 34
3.2 Rear Panel 36
3.2.1 Power Connector 37

3.2.2 External Backup Power Supply Connector 37
3.2.3 Console Port 37
3.3 LEDs 38

Part II: Basic Configuration 39

Chapter 4
The Web Configurator 41

4.1 Introduction 41
4.2 System Login 41
4.3 The Status Screen 42
4.3.1 Change Your Password 47
4.4 Saving Your Configuration 48
4.5 Switch Lockout 48
4.6 Resetting the Switch 48
4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File 49
4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator 50
4.8 Help 50

Chapter 5
Initial Setup Example 51

5.1 Overview 51
5.1.1 Configuring an IP Interface 51
5.1.2 Configuring DHCP Server Settings 53
5.1.3 Creating a VLAN 53
5.1.4 Setting Port VID 55
5.1.5 Enabling RIP 56

Chapter 6
System Status and Port Statistics 57

6.1 Overview 57
6.2 Port Status Summary 58
6.2.1 Status: Port Details 59

Chapter 7
Basic Setting 63

7.1 Overview 63
7.2 System Information 64
7.3 General Setup 66
7.4 Introduction to VLANs 68
7.5 Switch Setup Screen 69

7.6 IP Setup 71
7.6.1 IP Interfaces 71
7.7 Port Setup 73

Part III: Advanced Setup 77

Chapter 8
VLAN 79

8.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs 79
8.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames 79
8.2 Automatic VLAN Registration 80
8.2.1 GARP 80
8.2.2 GVRP 80
8.3 Port VLAN Trunking 81
8.4 Select the VLAN Type 82
8.5 Static VLAN 82
8.5.1 Static VLAN Status 83
8.5.2 Static VLAN Details 84
8.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN 84
8.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings 87
8.6 Subnet Based VLANs 88
8.7 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN 89
8.8 Protocol Based VLANs 91
8.9 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN 92
8.10 Create an IP-based VLAN Example 94
8.11 Port-based VLAN Setup 95
8.11.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN 95

Chapter 9
Static MAC Forward Setup 99

9.1 Overview 99
9.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding 99

Chapter 10
Filtering 103

10.1 Configure a Filtering Rule 103

Chapter 11
Spanning Tree Protocol 105

11.1 STP/RSTP Overview 105
11.1.1 STP Terminology 105

11.1.2 How STP Works 106
11.1.3 STP Port States 107
11.1.4 Multiple STP 107
11.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen 110
11.3 Spanning Tree Configuration 111
11.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol 112
11.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status 114
11.6 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol 116
11.7 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status 119

Chapter 12
Bandwidth Control 123

12.1 Bandwidth Control Overview 123
12.1.1 CIR and PIR 123
12.2 Bandwidth Control Setup 124

Chapter 13
Broadcast Storm Control 127

13.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup 127

Chapter 14
Mirroring 129

14.1 Port Mirroring Setup 129

Chapter 15
Link Aggregation 131

15.1 Link Aggregation Overview 131
15.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation 131
15.2.1 Link Aggregation ID 132
15.3 Link Aggregation Status 132
15.4 Link Aggregation Setting 134
15.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol 135
15.6 Static Trunking Example 136

Chapter 16
Port Authentication 139

16.1 Port Authentication Overview 139
16.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication 139
16.1.2 MAC Authentication 140
16.2 Port Authentication Configuration 141
16.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security 142
16.2.2 Activate MAC Authentication 143

Chapter 17
Port Security 145

17.1 About Port Security 145
17.2 Port Security Setup 146

Chapter 18
Classifier 149

18.1 About the Classifier and QoS 149
18.2 Configuring the Classifier 149
18.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration 152
18.4 Classifier Example 155

Chapter 19
Policy Rule 157

19.1 Policy Rules Overview 157
19.1.1 DiffServ 157
19.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior 157
19.2 Configuring Policy Rules 158
19.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration 161
19.4 Policy Example 163

Chapter 20
Queuing Method 165

20.1 Queuing Method Overview 165
20.1.1 Strictly Priority 165
20.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing 165
20.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) 166
20.2 Configuring Queuing 167

Chapter 21
VLAN Stacking 169

21.1 VLAN Stacking Overview 169
21.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example 169
21.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles 170
21.3 VLAN Tag Format 171
21.3.1 Frame Format 171
21.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking 173

Chapter 22
Multicast 175

22.1 Multicast Overview 175
22.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses 175
22.1.2 IGMP Filtering 175

22.1.3 IGMP Snooping 176
22.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs 176
22.2 Multicast Status 176
22.3 Multicast Setting 177
22.4 IGMP Snooping VLAN 179
22.5 IGMP Filtering Profile 181
22.6 MVR Overview 183
22.6.1 Types of MVR Ports 183
22.6.2 MVR Modes 184
22.6.3 How MVR Works 184
22.7 General MVR Configuration 185
22.8 MVR Group Configuration 187
22.8.1 MVR Configuration Example 188

Chapter 23
Authentication & Accounting 191

23.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting 191
23.1.1 Local User Accounts 192
23.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+ 192
23.2 Authentication and Accounting Screens 192
23.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup 193
23.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup 195
23.2.3 Authentication and Accounting Setup 197
23.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute 199
23.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute 200
23.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes 201
23.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication 201
23.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting 202

Chapter 24
IP Source Guard 205

24.1 IP Source Guard Overview 205
24.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview 206
24.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview 208
24.2 IP Source Guard 209
24.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding 210
24.4 DHCP Snooping 213
24.5 DHCP Snooping Configure 217
24.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure 219
24.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure 220
24.6 ARP Inspection Status 222
24.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status 223
24.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status 224

24.7 ARP Inspection Configure 225
24.7.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure 227
24.7.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure 229

Chapter 25
Loop Guard 231

25.1 Loop Guard Overview 231
25.2 Loop Guard Setup 233

Part IV: IP Application 235

Chapter 26
Static Routing 237

26.1 Configuring Static Routing 237

Chapter 27
RIP 239

27.1 RIP Overview 239
27.2 Configuring RIP 239

Chapter 28
Differentiated Services 241

28.1 DiffServ Overview 241
28.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior 241
28.1.2 DiffServ Network Example 242
28.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing 242
28.2.1 TRTCM - Color-blind Mode 243
28.2.2 TRTCM - Color-aware Mode 243
28.3 Activating DiffServ 244
28.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings 245
28.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings 247
28.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings 248

Chapter 29
DHCP 249

29.1 DHCP Overview 249
29.1.1 DHCP Modes 249
29.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options 249
29.2 DHCP Status 250
29.3 DHCP Server Status Detail 250
29.4 DHCP Relay 252

29.4.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information 252
29.4.2 Configuring DHCP Global Relay 253
29.4.3 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example 254
29.5 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings 255
29.5.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs 257

Chapter 30
VRRP 259

30.1 VRRP Overview 259
30.2 VRRP Status 260
30.3 VRRP Configuration 261
30.3.1 IP Interface Setup 261
30.3.2 VRRP Parameters 263
30.3.3 Configuring VRRP Parameters 264
30.3.4 Configuring VRRP Parameters 265
30.4 VRRP Configuration Examples 265
30.4.1 One Subnet Network Example 266
30.4.2 Two Subnets Example 267

Part V: Management 269

Chapter 31
Maintenance 271

31.1 The Maintenance Screen 271
31.2 Load Factory Default 272
31.3 Save Configuration 273
31.4 Reboot System 273
31.5 Firmware Upgrade 273
31.6 Restore a Configuration File 274
31.7 Backup a Configuration File 275
31.8 FTP Command Line 275
31.8.1 Filename Conventions 275
31.8.2 FTP Command Line Procedure 276
31.8.3 GUI-based FTP Clients 277
31.8.4 FTP Restrictions 277

Chapter 32
Access Control 279

32.1 Access Control Overview 279
32.2 The Access Control Main Screen 279
32.3 About SNMP 280

32.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security 281
32.3.2 Supported MIBs 281
32.3.3 SNMP Traps 282
32.3.4 Configuring SNMP 285
32.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group 288
32.3.6 Setting Up Login Accounts 288
32.4 SSH Overview 290
32.5 How SSH works 291
32.6 SSH Implementation on the Switch 292
32.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH 292
32.7 Introduction to HTTPS 292
32.8 HTTPS Example 293
32.8.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages 293
32.8.2 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages 294
32.8.3 The Main Screen 296
32.9 Service Port Access Control 296
32.10 Remote Management 297

Chapter 33
Diagnostic 299

33.1 Diagnostic 299

Chapter 34
Syslog 301

34.1 Syslog Overview 301
34.2 Syslog Setup 302
34.3 Syslog Server Setup 303

Chapter 35
Cluster Management 305

35.1 Clustering Management Status Overview 305
35.2 Cluster Management Status 306
35.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management 307
35.3 Clustering Management Configuration 310

Chapter 36
MAC Table 313

36.1 MAC Table Overview 313
36.2 Viewing the MAC Table 314

Chapter 37
IP Table 317

37.1 IP Table Overview 317

37.2 Viewing the IP Table 318

Chapter 38
ARP Table 321

38.1 ARP Table Overview 321
38.1.1 How ARP Works 321
38.2 Viewing the ARP Table 322

Chapter 39
Routing Table 323

39.1 Overview 323
39.2 Viewing the Routing Table Status 323

Chapter 40
Configure Clone 325

40.1 Configure Clone 325

Part VI: Product Specifications 327

Chapter 41
Product Specifications 329

Part VII: Appendices and Index 337

Appendix A Legal Information 339

Index 343

PART I
Introduction

Getting to Know Your Switch (23)

Hardware Installation and Connection (29)

Hardware Overview (33)

1

Getting to Know Your Switch

This chapter introduces the main applications and features of the Switch. It also introduces the ways you can manage the Switch.

1.1 Introduction

The GS2200-48 is a stand-alone layer 2 Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) switch. It comes with 44 100/1000 Mbps Ethernet ports, 4 Dual Personality interfaces (each consisting of one RJ-45 Gigabit port and one slot for a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module) with one port active at a time) and two mini-GBIC transceivers for fiber-optic uplink connections.

This section shows a few examples of using the Switch in various network environments.

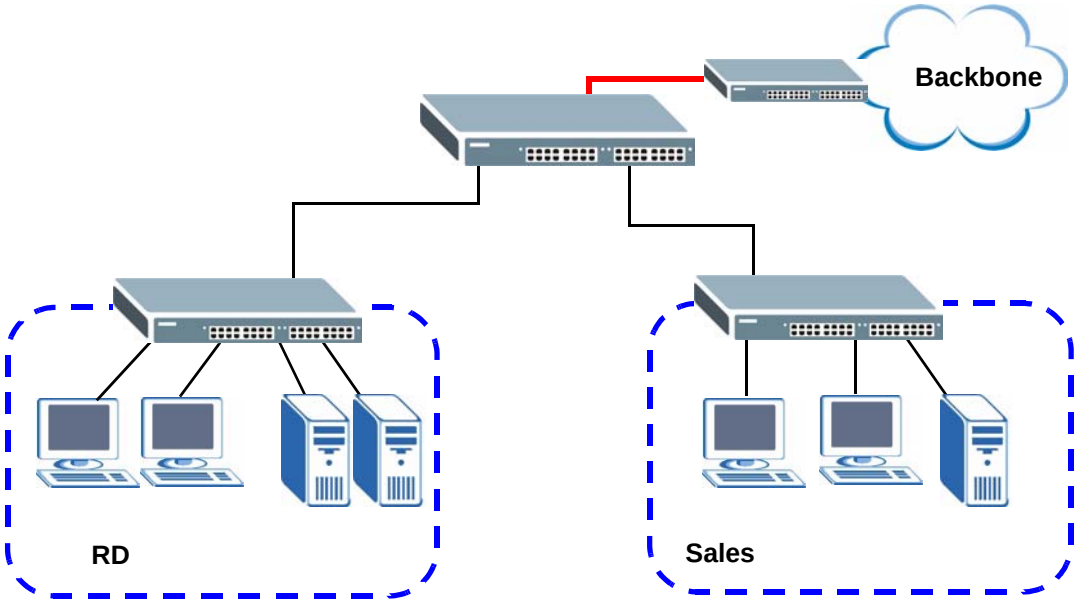
See Chapter 41 on page 329 for a full list of software features available on the Switch.

1.1.1 Bridging Example

In this example the Switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can

connect to high-speed department servers via the Switch. You can provide a fast uplink connection by using the Gigabit uplink ports on the Switch.

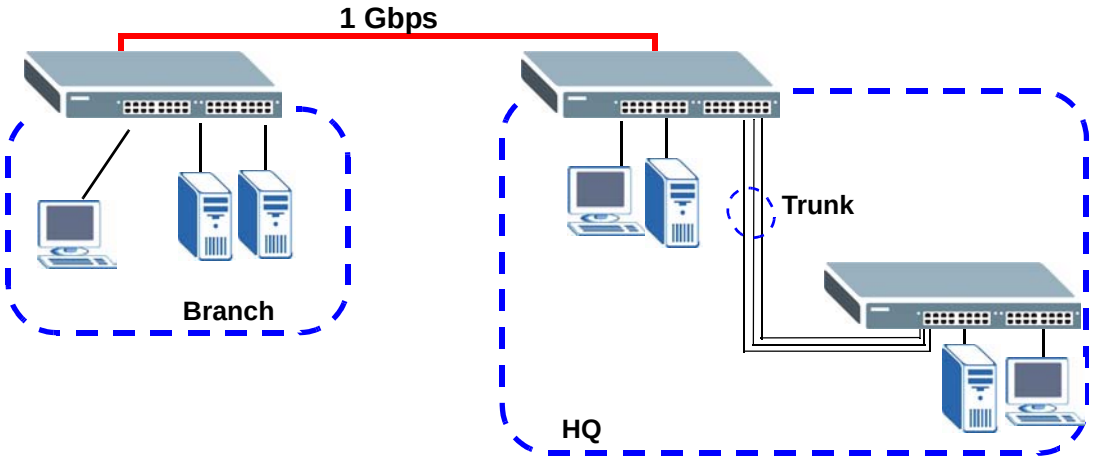
Figure 1 Bridging Application



1.1.2 High Performance Switching Example

The Switch is ideal for connecting two geographically dispersed networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, a company uses the Gigabit uplink ports to connect the headquarters to a branch office network. Within the headquarters network, a company can use trunking to group several physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. Trunking can be used with copper cabling over relatively shorter distances than fiber-optic connections.

Figure 2 High Performance Switching

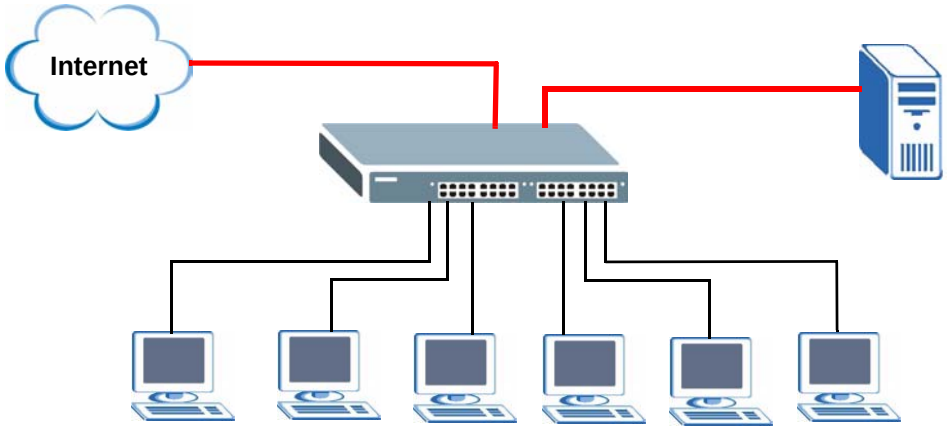


1.1.3 Gigabit Ethernet to the Desktop

The Switch is an ideal solution for small networks which demand high bandwidth for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers and servers directly to the Switch's port or connect other switches to the Switch. Use the Gigabit uplink ports to provide high speed access to a data server and the Internet. The uplink ports support a fiber-optic connection which alleviate the distance limitations of copper cabling.

In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server and access the Internet. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers and so on.

Figure 3 Gigabit to the Desktop



1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Example

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one or more groups. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

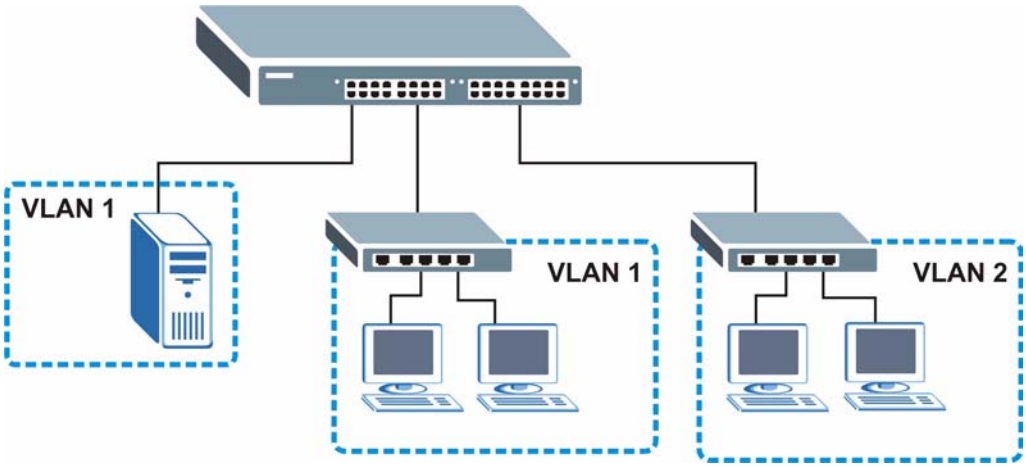
For more information on VLANs, refer to Chapter 8 on page 79.

1.1.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain, thus increasing network performance by reducing broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. In the following figure only ports that need access to the server need to be part of VLAN 1. Ports on the Switch can belong to other VLAN groups too.

Figure 4 Shared Server Using VLAN Example



1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch

Use any of the following methods to manage the Switch.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Switch using a (supported) web browser. See Chapter 4 on page 41.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands offer an alternative to the Web Configurator and may be necessary to configure advanced features. See the CLI Reference Guide.
- FTP. Use File Transfer Protocol for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore. See Section 31.8 on page 275.
- SNMP. The device can be monitored and/or managed by an SNMP manager. See Section 32.3 on page 280.

1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch

Do the following things regularly to make the Switch more secure and to manage the Switch more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.

- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Switch to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Switch. You could simply restore your last configuration.

2

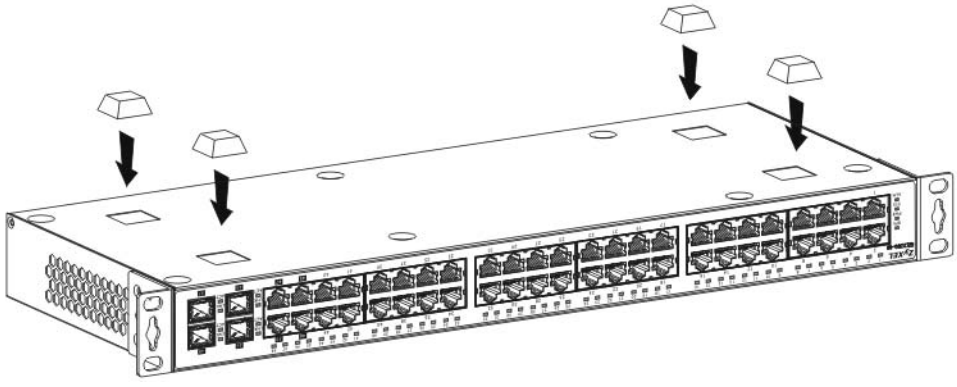
Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the Switch.

2.1 Freestanding Installation

1. Make sure the Switch is clean and dry.
2. Set the Switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the Switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
3. Make sure there is enough clearance around the Switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.
4. Remove the adhesive backing from the rubber feet.
5. Attach the rubber feet to each corner on the bottom of the Switch. These rubber feet help protect the Switch from shock or vibration and ensure space between devices when stacking.

Figure 5 Attaching Rubber Feet



Note: Do NOT block the ventilation holes. Leave space between devices when stacking.

Note: For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the Switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

2.2 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

This section lists the rack mounting requirements and precautions and describes the installation steps.

2.2.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

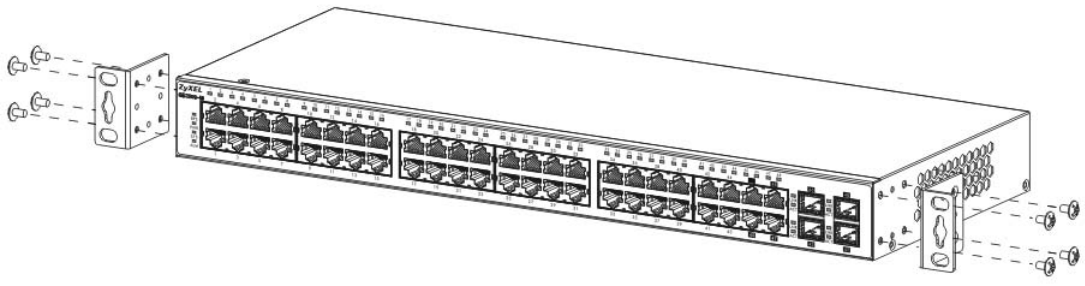
2.2.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the Switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

2.2.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the Switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the Switch.

Figure 6 Attaching the Mounting Brackets



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the Switch.

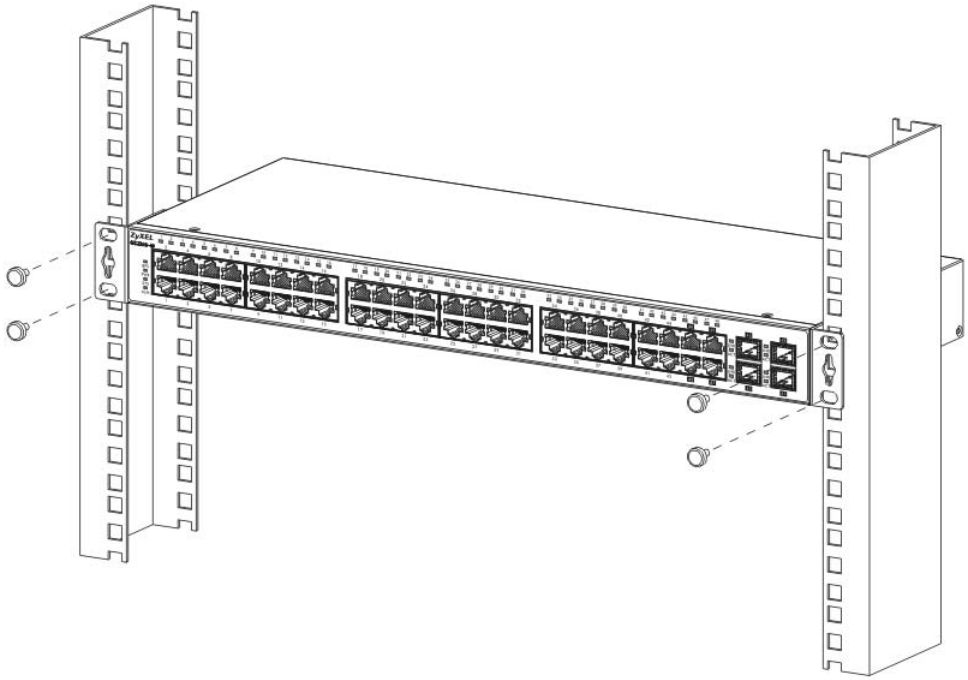
3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the Switch.

4 You may now mount the Switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

2.2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the Switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

Figure 7 Mounting the Switch on a Rack



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

3

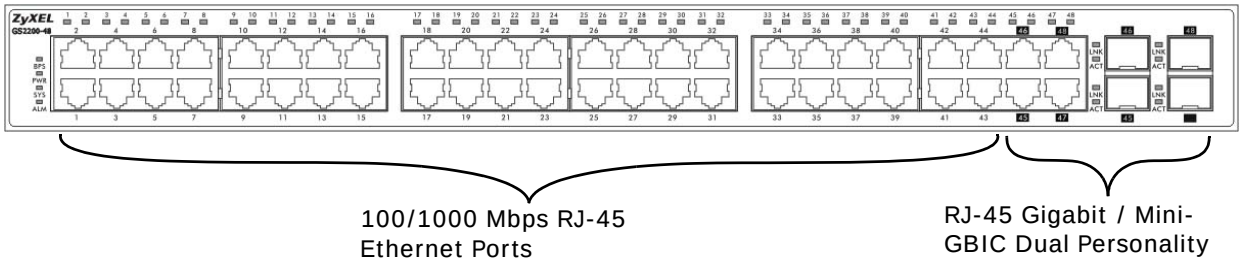
Hardware Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the Switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

3.1 Front Panel Connections

The figure below shows the front panel of the Switch.

Figure 8 Front Panel



The following table describes the ports.

Table 1 Panel Connections

CONNECTOR	DESCRIPTION
44 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ethernet Ports	Connect these ports to a computer, a hub, an Ethernet switch or router.
Four Dual Personality Interfaces	Each interface has one 1000 Base-T RJ-45 port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) slot (also called a mini-GBIC slot), with one port or transceiver active at a time.
4 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ports	Connect these ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches using 1000Base-T compatible Category 5/5e/6 copper cables.
4 Mini-GBIC Slots	Use mini-GBIC transceivers in these slots for fiber-optic connections to backbone Ethernet switches.

3.1.1 1000Base-T Ports

The Switch has 48 1000Base-T auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports (4 of which are part of the Dual Personality interfaces). In 100/1000 Mbps Gigabit Ethernet, the speed can be 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps. The duplex mode can be both half or full duplex at 100 Mbps and full duplex only at 1000 Mbps.

An auto-negotiating Gigabit Ethernet port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (100/1000 Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

3.1.1.1 Default Ethernet Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Ethernet ports on the Switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off

3.1.2 Dual Personality Interfaces

There are 4 Dual Personality interfaces, comprising 4 1000Base-T/mini-GBIC combo ports. For each interface you can connect either to the 1000Base-T port or the mini-GBIC port. The mini-GBIC ports have priority over the 1000Base-T ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC port and the corresponding 1000Base-T port are connected at the same time, the 1000Base-T port will be disabled.

3.1.3 Mini-GBIC Slots

These are 6 slots for Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers. Four of them are part of the Dual Personality interfaces and two are used for high speed uplink.

A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. Use a transceiver to connect a fiber-optic cable to the Switch. The Switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the Switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic connectors.

- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

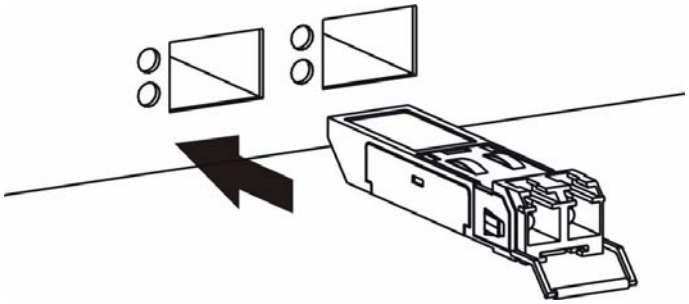
To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

3.1.3.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP or XFP module).

1 Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.

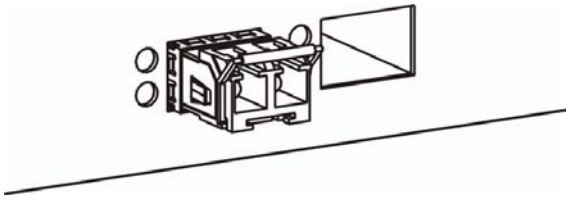
Figure 9 Transceiver Installation Example



2 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.

3 The Switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.

Figure 10 Installed Transceiver

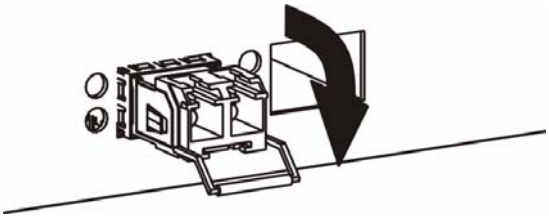


3.1.3.2 Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove a mini GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

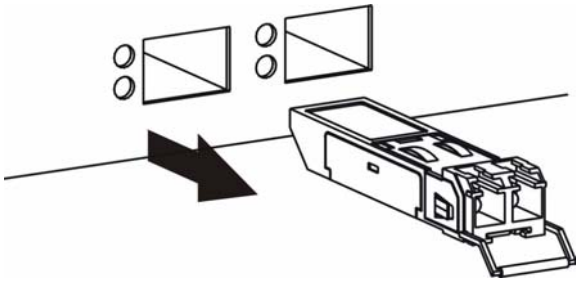
1 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

Figure 11 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example



2 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

Figure 12 Transceiver Removal Example

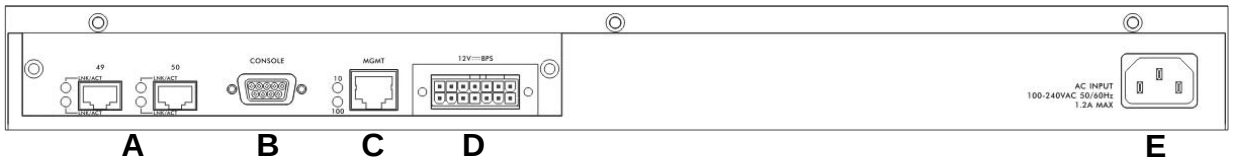


3.2 Rear Panel

The following figures show the rear panel of the switch. The rear panel contains:

- Two Mini-GBIC uplink slots (**A**)
- An RS-232 management console port (**B**)
- An RJ-45 out-of-band management port (**C**)
- A connector for the backup power supply (**D**)
- A connector for the power receptacle (**E**)

Figure 13 Rear Panel



The following table describes the ports on the rear panel.

Table 2 Panel Connections

CONNECTOR	DESCRIPTION
2 Mini-GBIC Slots	Use mini-GBIC transceivers in these slots for fiber-optic connections to backbone Ethernet switches.
Console Port	Only connect this port to your computer (using an RS-232 cable) if you want to configure the Switch using the command line interface (CLI) via the console port.
Management Port	Connect to a computer using an RJ-45 Ethernet cable for local configuration of the Switch.

3.2.1 Power Connector

Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel.

To connect the power to the Switch, insert the female end of power cord to the power receptacle on the rear panel. Connect the other end of the supplied power cord to a power outlet. Make sure that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans.

The Switch requires a power supply of 100-240 VAC, 1.2 A.

3.2.2 External Backup Power Supply Connector

The Switch supports external backup power supply (BPS).

The Switch constantly monitors the status of the internal power supply. The backup power supply automatically provides power to the Switch in the event of a power failure. Once the Switch receives power from the backup power supply, it will not automatically switch back to using the internal power supply even when the power is resumed.

3.2.3 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100 terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the RS-232 console cable to the console port of the Switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

3.3 LEDs

The following table describes the LEDs.

Table 3 LEDs

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
BPS	Green	Blinking	The system is receiving power from the backup power supply.
		On	The backup power supply is connected and active.
		Off	The backup power supply is not ready or not active.
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/ malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	There is a hardware failure.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ethernet Ports			
Link and Active	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
Mini-GBIC Slot			
LNK	Green	On	The port has a successful connection.
		Off	No Ethernet device is connected to this port.
ACT	Green	Blinking	The port is receiving or transmitting data.

PART II
Basic Configuration

The Web Configurator (41)

Initial Setup Example (51)

System Status and Port Statistics (57)

Basic Setting (63)

4

The Web Configurator

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

4.1 Introduction

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy Switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

4.2 System Login

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type “http://” and the IP address of the Switch (for example, the default management IP address is 192.168.1.1 through an in-band (non-**MGMT**) port and 192.168.0.1 through the **MGMT** port) in the **Location** or **Address** field. Press [ENTER].

3 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

Figure 14 Web Configurator: Login

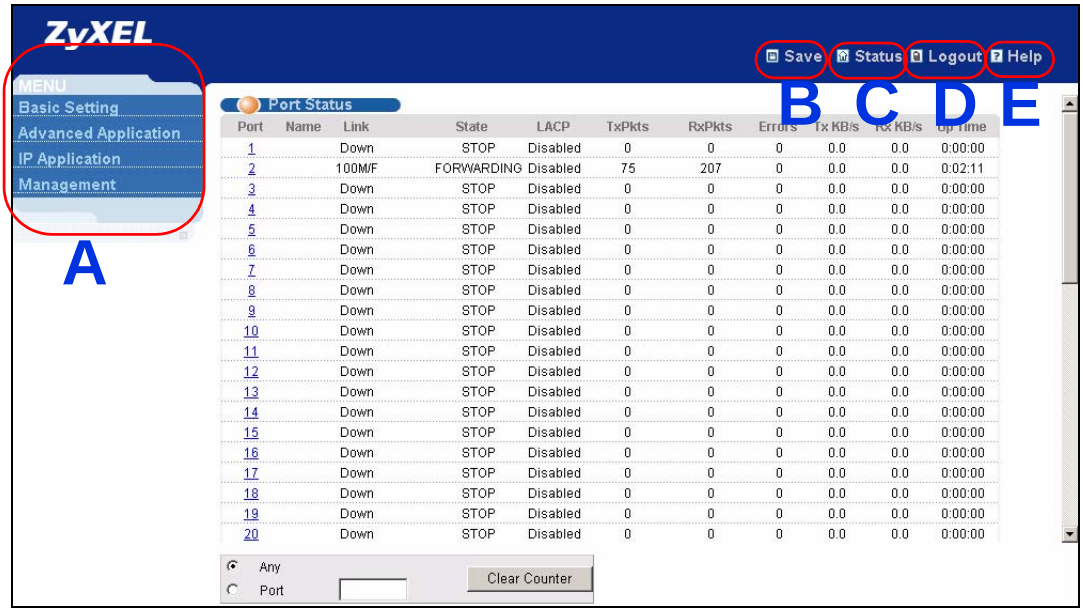
4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

4.3 The Status Screen

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

Figure 15 Web Configurator Home Screen (Status)


ZyXEL
Save
Status
Logout
Help
MENU
Basic Setting
Advanced Application
IP Application
Management
A
B
C
D
E
Port Status
Port Name Link State LACP TxPkts RxPkts Errors Tx KB/s Rx KB/s Up Time
1 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
2 100M/F FORWARDING Disabled 75 207 0 0.0 0.0 0:02:11
3 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
4 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
5 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
6 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
7 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
8 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
9 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
10 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
11 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
12 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
13 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
14 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
15 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
16 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
17 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
18 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
19 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
20 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
Any
Port
Clear Counter

A - Click the menu items to open submenu links, and then click on a submenu link to open the screen in the main window.

B, C, D, E - These are quick links which allow you to perform certain tasks no matter which screen you are currently working in.

B - Click this link to save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory is saved in the configuration file from which the Switch booted from and it stays the same even if the Switch's power is turned off. See Section 31.3 on page 273 for information on saving your settings to a specific configuration file.

C - Click this link to go to the status page of the Switch.

D - Click this link to log out of the web configurator.

E - Click this link to display web help pages. The help pages provide descriptions for all of the configuration screens.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

Table 4 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT

The following table lists the various web configurator screens within the sub-links.

Table 5 Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
System Info General Setup Switch Setup IP Setup Port Setup	VLAN (Status) VLAN Port Setting - Subnet Based VLAN - Protocol Based VLAN Static VLAN Static MAC Forwarding Filtering Spanning Tree Protocol (Status) Configuration RSTP MSTP Bandwidth Control Broadcast Storm Control Mirroring Link Aggregation (Status) Link Aggregation Setting - Link Aggregation Control Protocol Port Authentication 802.1x MAC Authentication Port Security Classifier Policy Rule Queuing Method VLAN Stacking Multicast (Status) Multicast Setting - IGMP Snooping VLAN - IGMP Filtering Profile - MVR -- Group Configuration Authentication and Accounting RADIUS Server Setup TACACS+ Server Setup Auth and Acct Setup	Static Routing RIP DiffServ 2-Rate 3 Color Marker DSCP Setting DHCP (Status) DHCP Relay VLAN Setting VRRP (Status) VRRP Configuration	Maintenance Firmware Upgrade Restore Configuration Backup Configuration Access Control SNMP - Trap Group Logins Service Access Control Remote Management Diagnostic Syslog (Setup) Syslog Server Setup Cluster Management (Status) Configuration MAC Table IP Table ARP Table Routing Table (Status) Configure Clone

Table 6 Web Configurator Screen Sub-links Details

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
	IP Source Guard IP Source Guard Static Binding DHCP Snooping - DHCP Snooping Configure -- DHCP Snooping Port Configure -- DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure ARP Inspection Status - ARP Inspection VLAN Status - ARP Inspection Log Status - ARP Inspection Configure -- ARP Inspection Port Configure -- ARP Inspection VLAN Configure Loop Guard		

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

Table 7 Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system and hardware monitoring information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information and time settings for the Switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global Switch parameters such as VLAN type, MAC address learning, IGMP snooping, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IP address, subnet mask (necessary for Switch management) and DNS (domain name server) and set up to 64 IP routing domains.
Port Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure speed, flow control and priority settings for individual Switch ports.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the Switch Setup menu). You can also configure a protocol based VLAN or a subnet based VLAN in these screens.
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the RSTP/MSTP to prevent network loops.

Table 7 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to screens where you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed from specified source(s) to specified destination(s).
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference.
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to screen where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure IEEE 802.1x port authentication as well as MAC authentication for clients communicating via the Switch.
Port Security	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.
VLAN Stacking	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate and configure VLAN stacking.
Multicast	This link takes you to screen where you can configure various multicast features and create multicast VLANs.
Auth and Acct	This link takes you to screens where you can configure authentication and accounting services via external servers. The external servers can be either RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) or TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus).
IP Source Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can configure filtering of unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Loop Guard	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure protection against network loops that occur on the edge of your network.
IP Application	
Static Routing	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the Switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
RIP	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the RIP (Routing Information Protocol) direction and versions.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, configure marking rules and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the DHCP settings.
VRRP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure redundant virtual router for your network.
Management	

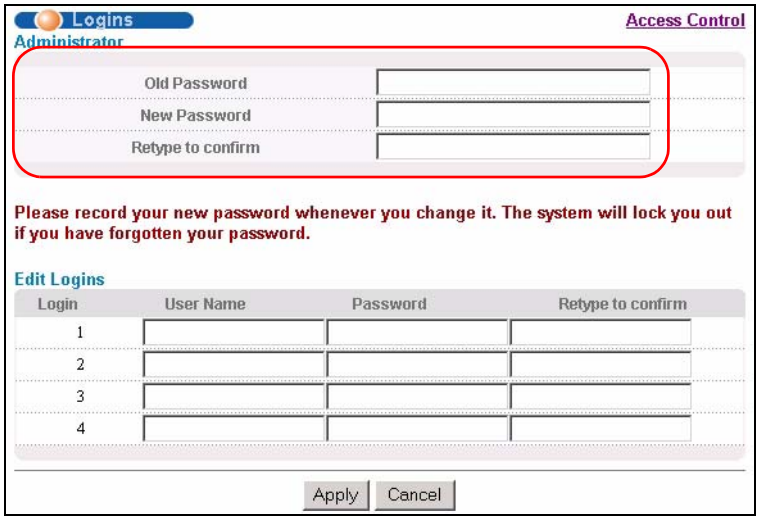
Table 7 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to screens where you can view system logs and can test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address and VLAN ID of a device attach to a port. You can also view what kind of device it is.
IP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the IP addresses and VLAN ID of a device attached to a port.You can also view what kind of device it is.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address – IP address resolution table.
Routing Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the routing table.
Configure Clone	This link takes you to a screen where you can copy attributes of one port to (an)other port(s).

4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management** > **Access Control > Logins** to display the next screen.

Figure 16 Change Administrator Login Password



4.4 Saving Your Configuration

When you are done modifying the settings in a screen, click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Click the **Save** link in the upper right hand corner of the web configurator to save your configuration to nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory refers to the Switch's storage that remains even if the Switch's power is turned off.

Note: Use the **Save** link when you are done with a configuration session.

4.5 Switch Lockout

You could block yourself (and all others) from using in-band-management (managing through the data ports) if you do one of the following:

1. Delete the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).
2. Delete all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The "CPU port" is the management port of the Switch.
3. Filter all traffic to the CPU port.
4. Disable all ports.
5. Misconfigure the text configuration file.
6. Forget the password and/or IP address.
7. Prevent all services from accessing the Switch.
8. Change a service port number but forget it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the Switch. If you do lock yourself out, try using out-of-band management (via the management port) to configure the Switch.

4.6 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the Switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600bps with 8 data bit, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to "1234" and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

1. Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software. See Section 3.2 on page 36 for details.
2. Disconnect and reconnect the Switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the Switch's power, you will see the initial screen.
3. When you see the message "`Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds ...`" press any key to enter debug mode.
4. Type `atlc` after the "`Enter Debug Mode`" message.
5. Wait for the "`Starting XMODEM upload`" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.
6. After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the Switch.

Figure 17 Resetting the Switch: Via the Console Port

```
Bootbase Version: V1.0 | 04/21/2009 16:27:22
RAM:Size = 64 Mbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 65536K OK
DRAM Test SUCCESS !
FLASH: Intel 64M

ZyNOS Version: V3.80(BPR.0)b4 | 6/9/2009 11:48:47

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.............................
Enter Debug Mode

GS2200-48> atlc
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
CCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Total  393216 bytes received.
Erasing..
............................................................
OK
GS2200-48> atgo
```

The Switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of “1234”.

4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

Figure 18 Web Configurator: Logout Screen

4.8 Help

The web configurator’s online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

5

Initial Setup Example

This chapter shows how to set up the Switch for an example network.

5.1 Overview

The following lists the configuration steps for the example network:

- Configure an IP interface
- Configure DHCP server settings
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Enable RIP

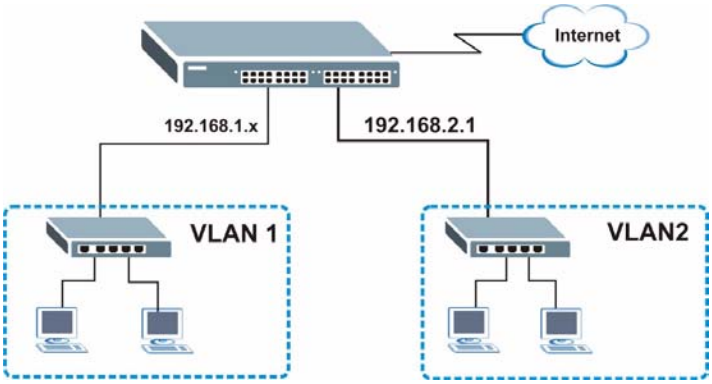
5.1.1 Configuring an IP Interface

On a switch, an IP interface (also known as an IP routing domain) is not bound to a physical port. The default IP address of the Switch is 192.168.1.1 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

In the example network, since the **RD** network is already in the same IP interface as the Switch, you don't need to create an IP interface for it. However, if you want to have the **Sales** network on a different routing domain, you need to create a

new IP interface. This allows the Switch to route traffic between the **RD** and **Sales** networks.

Figure 19 Initial Setup Network Example: IP Interface

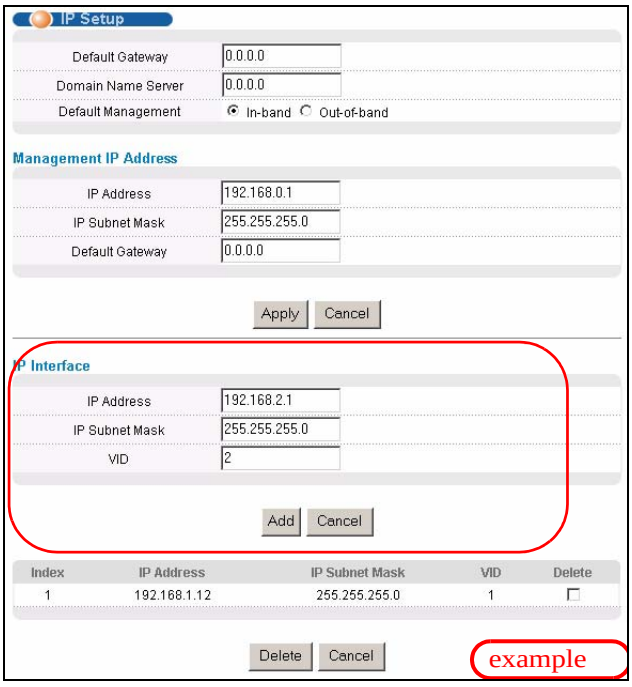


1 Connect your computer to the **MGMT** port that is used only for management. Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the **MGMT** port.

2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.0.1 (the default **MGMT** port IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See Section 4.2 on page 41 for more information.

3 Click **Basic Setting** and **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.

4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.



For the **Sales** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.

5 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this IP interface to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.

6 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

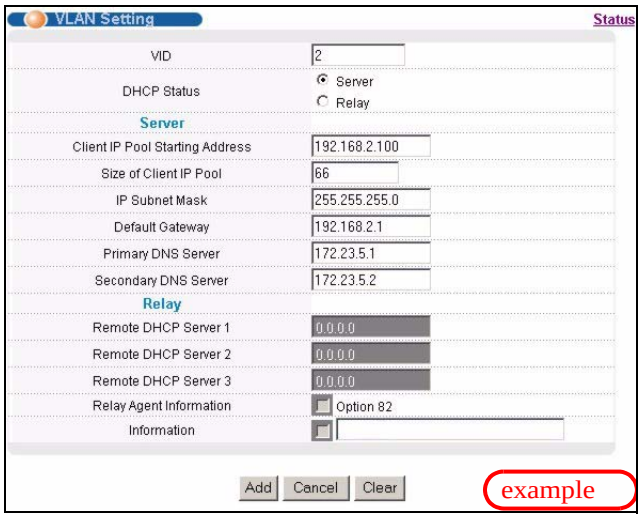
5.1.2 Configuring DHCP Server Settings

You can set the Switch to assign network information (such as the IP address, DNS server, etc.) to DHCP clients on the network.

For the example network, configure two DHCP client pools on the Switch for the DHCP clients in the **RD** and **Sales** networks.

1 In the web configurator, click **IP Application** and **DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **VLAN** link.

2 In the **VLAN Setting** screen, specify the ID of the VLAN to which the DHCP clients belong, the starting IP address pool, subnet mask, default gateway address and the DNS server address(es).



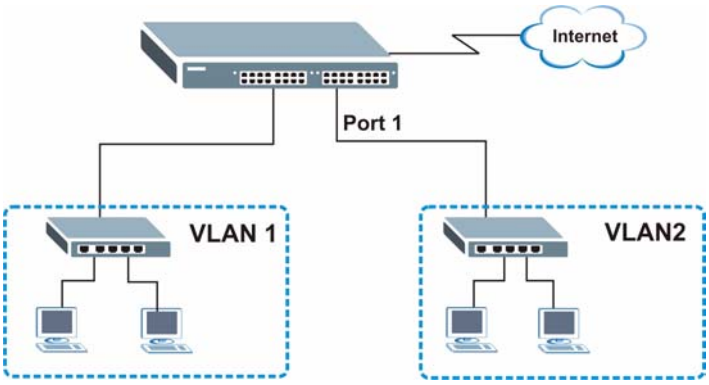
3 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

5.1.3 Creating a VLAN

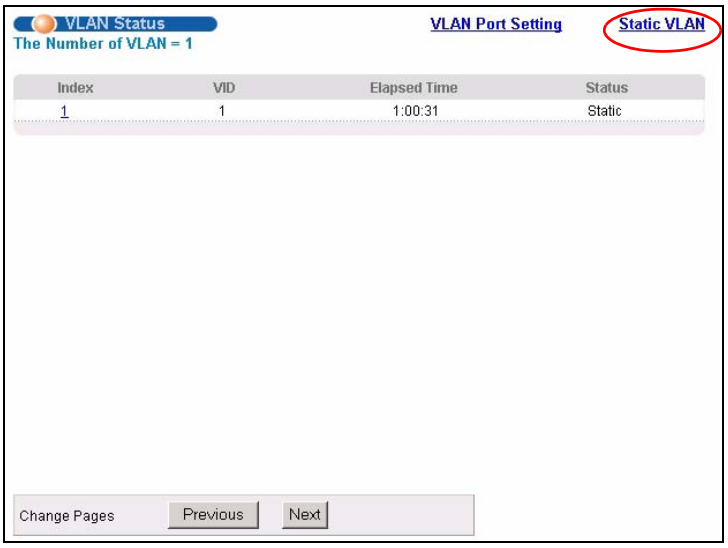
VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 1 as a member of VLAN 2.

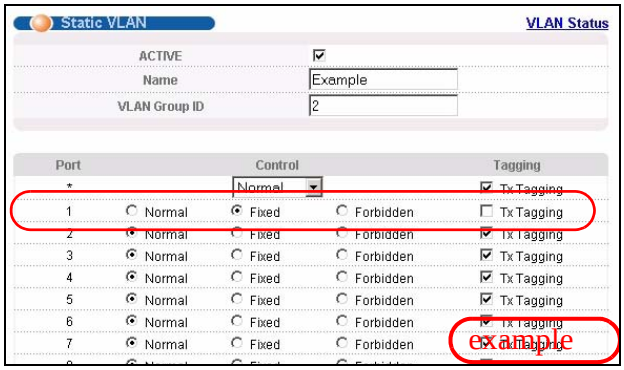
Figure 20 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



1 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN** link.



2 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **VLAN2** network.



Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

3 Since the **VLAN2** network is connected to port 1 on the Switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 1 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.

4 To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

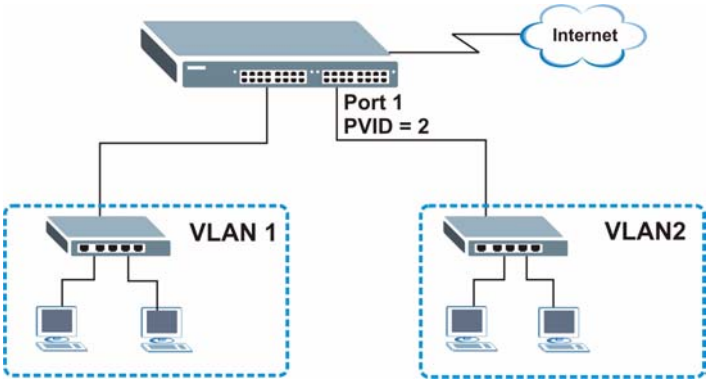
5 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

5.1.4 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

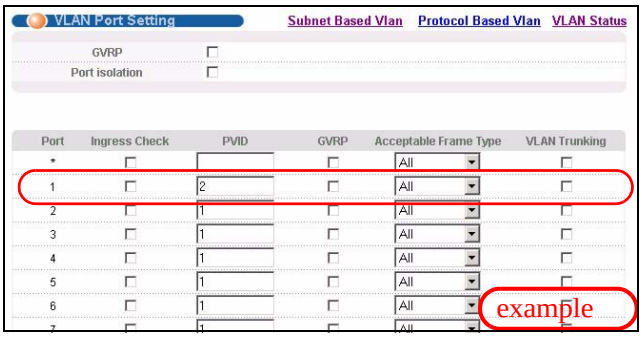
In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 1 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

Figure 21 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID



1 Click **Advanced Applications** and **VLAN** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setting** link.

2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 1 and click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



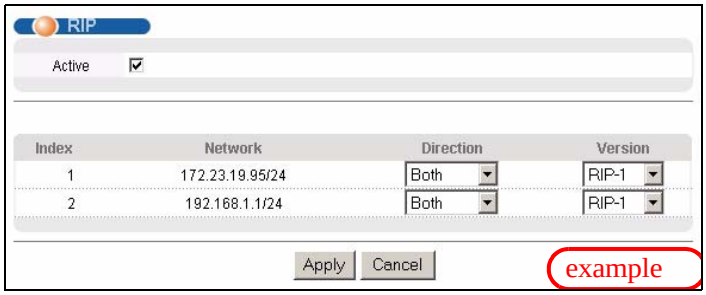
5.1.5 Enabling RIP

To exchange routing information with other routing devices across different routing domains, enable RIP (Routing Information Protocol) in the **RIP** screen.

1 Click **IP Application** and **RIP** in the navigation panel.

2 Select **Both** in the **Direction** field to set the Switch to broadcast and receive routing information.

3 In the **Version** field, select **RIP-1** for the RIP packet format that is universally supported.



4 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

6

System Status and Port Statistics

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

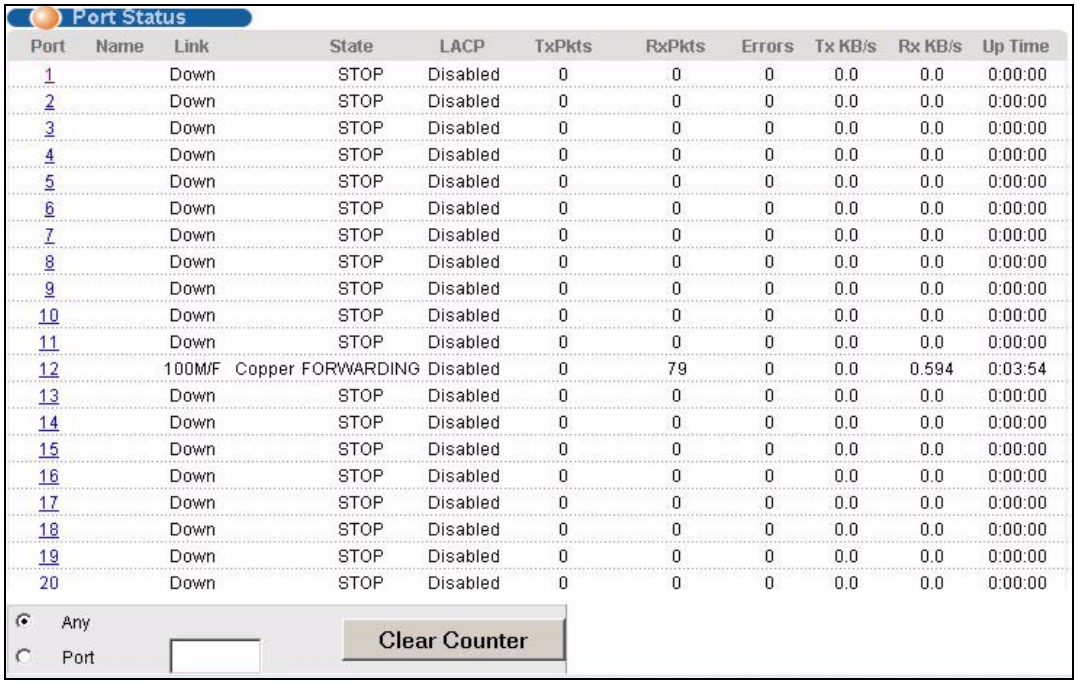
6.1 Overview

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

6.2 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 22 Status


Port Status
Port Name Link State LACP TxPkts RxPkts Errors Tx KB/s Rx KB/s Up Time
1 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
2 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
3 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
4 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
5 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
6 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
7 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
8 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
9 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
10 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
11 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
12 100M/F Copper FORWARDING Disabled 0 79 0 0.0 0.594 0:03:54
13 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
14 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
15 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
16 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
17 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
18 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
19 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
20 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
Any
Port
Clear Counter

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the **Port Details** screen (refer to Figure 23 on page 59).
Name	This is the name you assigned to this port in the **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** screen.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10 Mbps, **100M** for 100 Mbps and **1000M** for 1000 Mbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**) for the combo ports.
State	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port. (see Section 11.1.3 on page 107 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays **FORWARDING** if the link is up, otherwise, it displays **STOP**.
LACP	This fields displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.

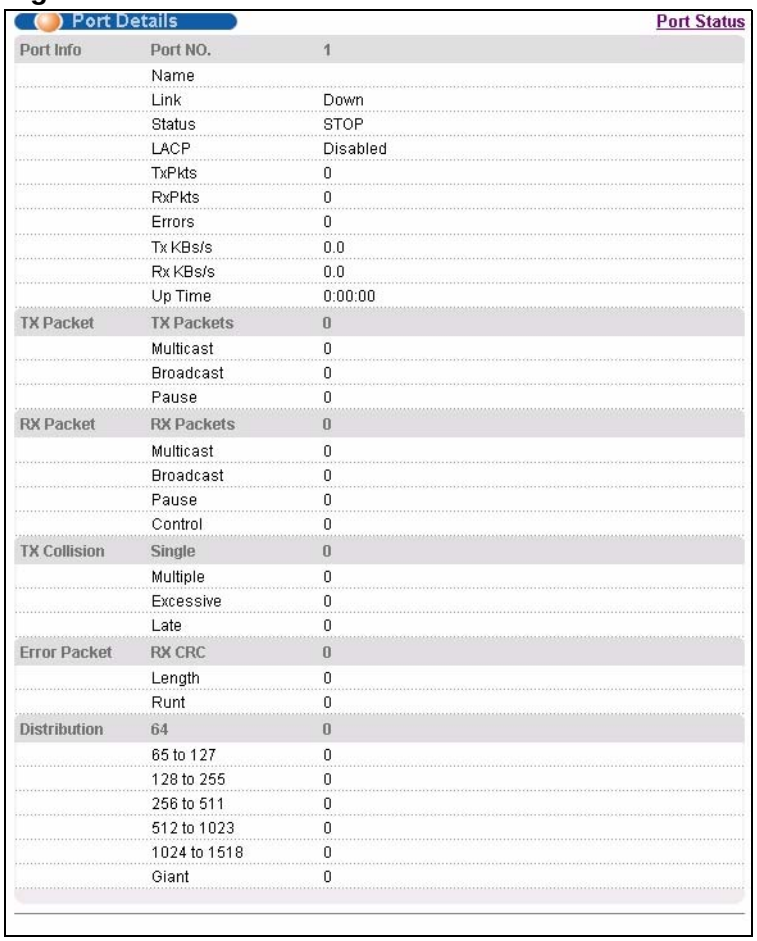
Table 8 Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tx KB/s	This field shows the transmission speed of data sent on this port in kilobytes per second.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the transmission speed of data received on this port in kilobytes per second.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Clear Counter	Type a port number, select **Port** and then click **Clear Counter** to erase the recorded statistical information for that port, or select **Any** to clear statistics for all ports.

6.2.1 Status: Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the Switch.

Figure 23 Status: Port Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Status > Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field displays the port number you are viewing.
Name	This field displays the name of the port.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10Mbps, **100M** for 100Mbpsl, **1000M** for 1000 Mbps, and **10G** for 10 Gbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**).
Status	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see Section 11.1.3 on page 107 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays FORWARDING if the link is up, otherwise, it displays STOP.
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the transmission speed of data sent on this port in kilobytes per second.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the transmission speed of data received on this port in kilobytes per second.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
TX Packets	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Rx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
RX Packets	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
Control	This field shows the number of control packets received (including those with CRC error) but it does not include the 802.3x Pause packets.
TX Collision The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	

Table 9 Status > Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	The following fields display detailed information about packets received that were in error.
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Length	This field shows the number of packets received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65 to 127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128 to 255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256 to 511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512 to 1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.
1024 to 1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets dropped because they were bigger than the maximum frame size.

7

Basic Setting

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info, General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup** and **Port Setup** screens.

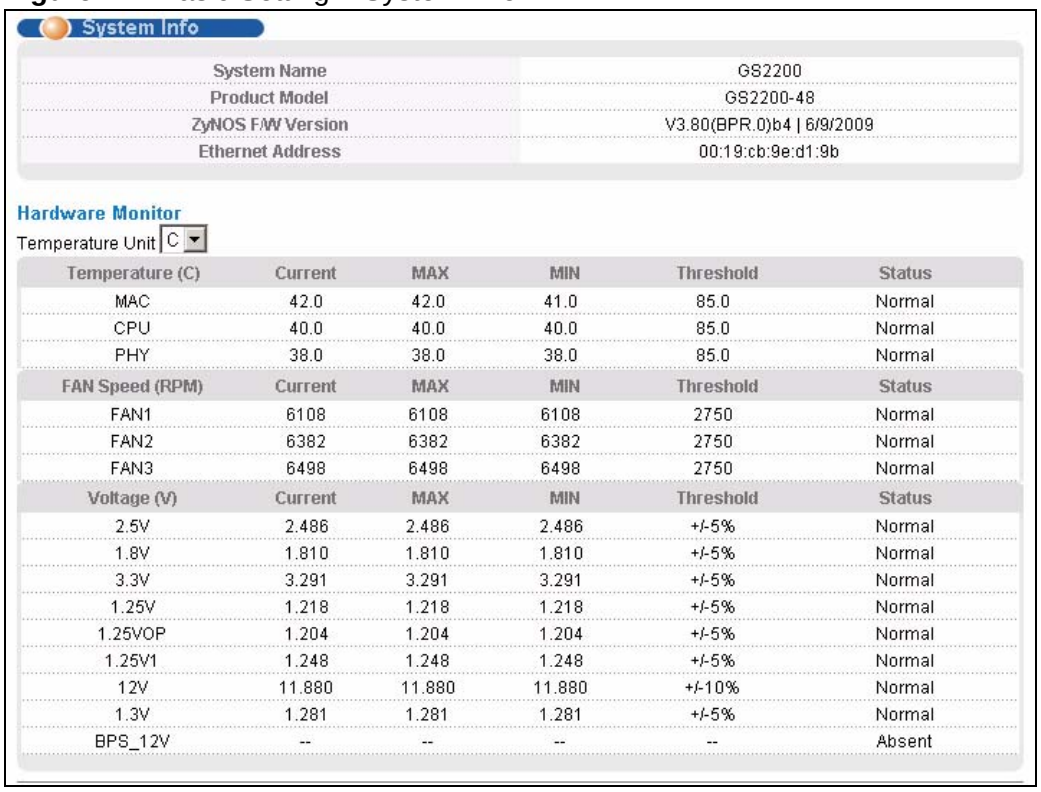
7.1 Overview

The **System Info** screen displays general Switch information (such as firmware version number) and hardware polling information (such as fan speeds). The **General Setup** screen allows you to configure general Switch identification information. The **General Setup** screen also allows you to set the system time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your Switch. The real time is then displayed in the Switch logs. The **Switch Setup** screen allows you to set up and configure global Switch features. The **IP Setup** screen allows you to configure a Switch IP address in each routing domain, subnet mask(s) and DNS (domain name server) for management purposes.

7.2 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** > **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number and monitor the Switch temperature, fan speeds and voltage in this screen.

Figure 24 Basic Setting > System Info


System Info
System Name GS2200
Product Model GS2200-48
ZyNOS F/W Version V3.80(BPR.0)b4 | 6/9/2009
Ethernet Address 00:19:cb:9e:d1:9b
Hardware Monitor
Temperature Unit C
Temperature (C) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
MAC 42.0 42.0 41.0 85.0 Normal
CPU 40.0 40.0 40.0 85.0 Normal
PHY 38.0 38.0 38.0 85.0 Normal
FAN Speed (RPM) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
FAN1 6108 6108 6108 2750 Normal
FAN2 6382 6382 6382 2750 Normal
FAN3 6498 6498 6498 2750 Normal
Voltage (V) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
2.5V 2.486 2.486 2.486 +/-5% Normal
1.8V 1.810 1.810 1.810 +/-5% Normal
3.3V 3.291 3.291 3.291 +/-5% Normal
1.25V 1.218 1.218 1.218 +/-5% Normal
1.25VOP 1.204 1.204 1.204 +/-5% Normal
1.25V1 1.248 1.248 1.248 +/-5% Normal
12V 11.880 11.880 11.880 +/-10% Normal
1.3V 1.281 1.281 1.281 +/-5% Normal
BPS_12V -- -- -- -- Absent

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the Switch for identification purposes. You can configure this name in the **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** screen.
Product Model	This field displays the model name of the Switch.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the Switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The Switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.

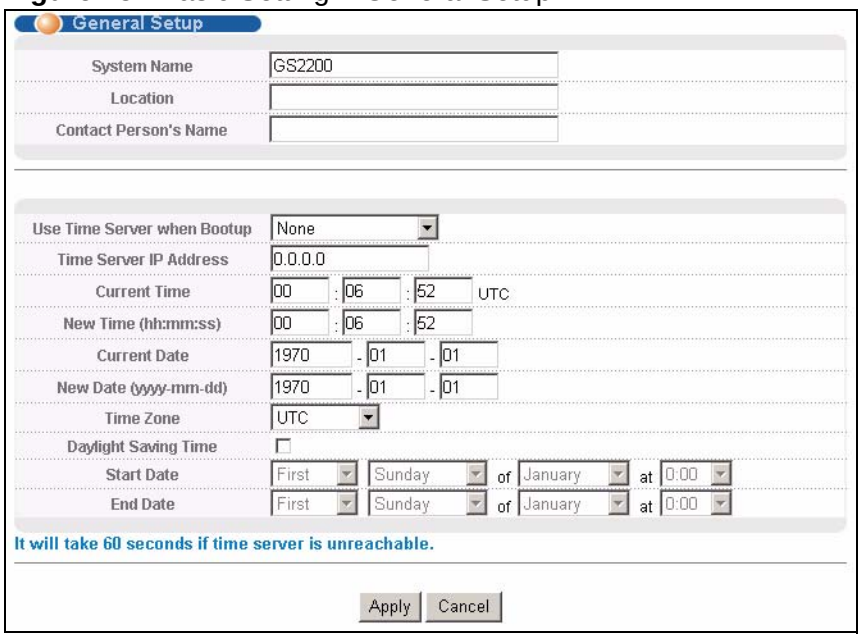
Table 10 Basic Setting > System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Temperature	**MAC**, **CPU**, and **PHY** refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the Switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays **Normal** for temperatures below the threshold and **Error** for those above.
Fan Speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in RPM.
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in RPM. "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure (under 2000 RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	**Normal** indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. **Error** indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage (V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the Switch still works.
Status	**Normal** indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise **Error** is displayed. This field may also display **Absent** in the field corresponding to the backup power supply (BPS_12V), if the backup power supply is not in use.

7.3 General Setup

Use this screen to configure general settings such as the system name and time. Click **Basic Setting** and **General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 25 Basic Setting > General Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Type a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Type the geographic location of your Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Contact Person's Name	Type the name of the person in charge of this Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use Time Server when Bootup	Type the time service protocol that your timeserver uses. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format. When you select the **Daytime (RFC 867)** format, the Switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format, it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone. **Time (RFC-868)** format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. **NTP (RFC-1305)** is similar to Time (RFC-868). **None** is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the Switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0.
Time Server IP Address	Type the IP address of your timeserver. The Switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the **Current Time** field after you click **Apply**.
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the **Current Date** field after you click **Apply**.
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Daylight Saving Time	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening. Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **Second**, **Sunday**, **March** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **March** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).

Table 11 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **First**, **Sunday**, **November** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **October** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

7.4 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user on the same network.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

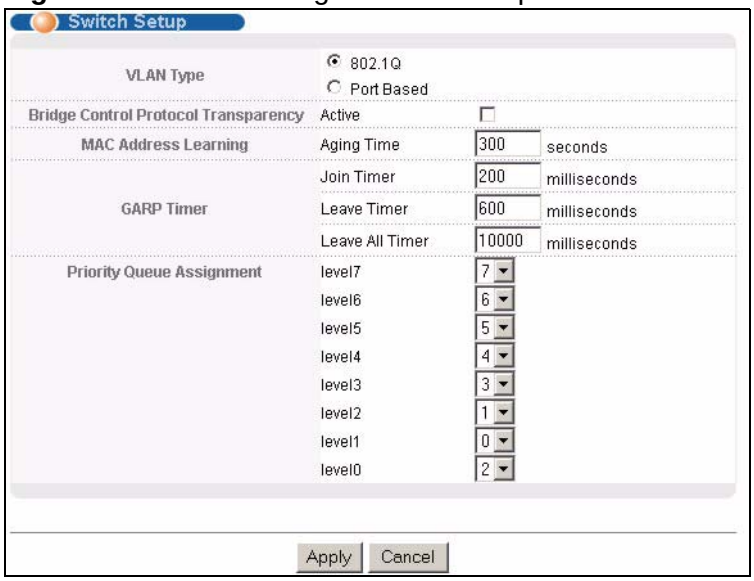
Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See Chapter 8 on page 79 for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

7.5 Switch Setup Screen

Click **Basic Setting** and then **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to the chapter on VLAN.

Figure 26 Basic Setting > Switch Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based**. The **VLAN Setup** screen changes depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** VLAN type or **Port Based** VLAN type in this screen. See Chapter 8 on page 79 for more information.
Bridge Control Protocol Transparency	Select **Active** to allow the Switch to handle bridging control protocols (STP, for example). You also need to define how to treat a BPDU in the **Port Setup** screen.
MAC Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing traffic broadcasts. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port must be active.
Aging Time	Enter a time from 10 to 3000 seconds. This is how long all dynamically learned MAC addresses remain in the MAC address table before they age out (and must be relearned).
GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a **Join** message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a **Leave** message. A **Leave All** message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more background information.	

Table 12 Basic Setting > Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a **Join Period** timer. The allowed **Join Time** range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the **Leave Period** timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single **Leave Period** timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than **Join Timer**; the default is 600 milliseconds.
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer.
Priority Queue Assignment IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the following fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping. The Switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the Switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.	
Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for “excellent effort” or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for “spare bandwidth”.
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical “background” traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

7.6 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the default gateway device, the default domain name server and add IP domains.

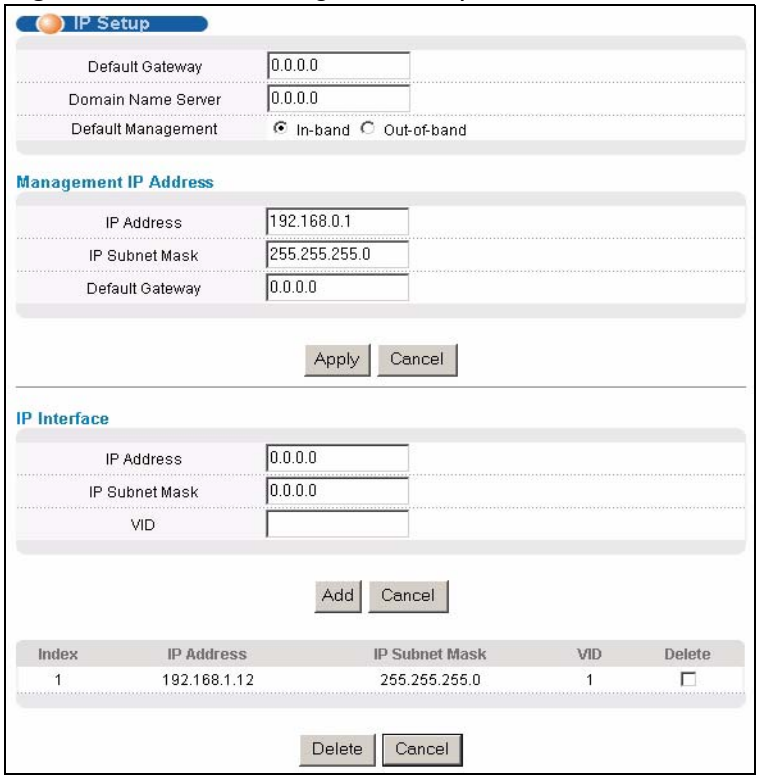
7.6.1 IP Interfaces

The Switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default in-band IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

On the Switch, an IP address is not bound to any physical ports. Since each IP address on the Switch must be in a separate subnet, the configured IP address is also known as IP interface (or routing domain). In addition, this allows routing between subnets based on the IP address without additional routers.

You can configure multiple routing domains on the same VLAN as long as the IP address ranges for the domains do not overlap. To change the IP address of the Switch in a routing domain, simply add a new routing domain entry with a different IP address in the same subnet.

Figure 27 Basic Setting > IP Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 13 Basic Setting > IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Gateway	Type the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management	Specify which traffic flow (**In-Band** or **Out-of-band**) the Switch is to send packets originating from itself (such as SNMP traps) or packets with unknown source. Select **Out-of-band** to have the Switch send the packets to the management port labelled **MGMT**. This means that device(s) connected to the other port(s) do not receive these packets. Select **In-Band** to have the Switch send the packets to all ports except the management port (labelled **MGMT**) to which connected device(s) do not receive these packets.
Management IP Address Use these fields to set the settings for the out-of-band management port.	
IP Address	Enter the out-of-band management IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.0.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation, for example, 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.0.254
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
IP Interface Use these fields to create or edit IP routing domains on the Switch.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1. This is the IP address of the Switch in an IP routing domain.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of an IP routing domain in dotted decimal notation, for example, 255.255.255.0.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number to which an IP routing domain belongs.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
IP Address	This field displays IP address of the Switch in the IP domain.

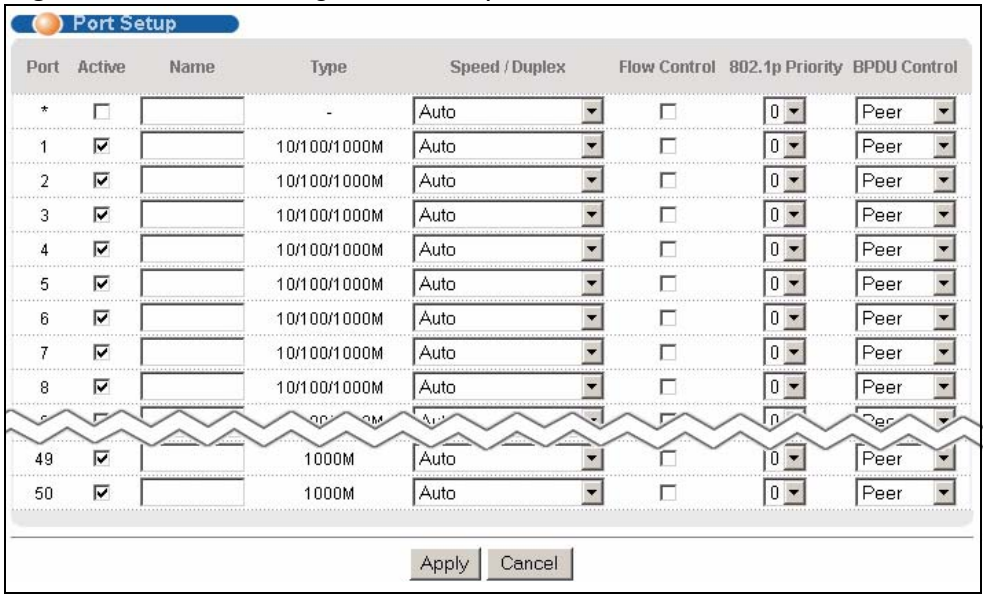
Table 13 Basic Setting > IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask of the Switch in the IP domain.
VID	This field displays the VLAN identification number of the IP domain on the Switch.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table. Note: Deleting all IP subnets locks you out of the Switch.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

7.7 Port Setup

Use this screen to configure Switch port settings.Click **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 28 Basic Setting > Port Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 Basic Setting > Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Type a descriptive name that identifies this port. You can enter up to 64 alpha-numerical characters. Note: Due to space limitations, the port name may be truncated in some web configurator screens.
Type	This field displays **10/100/1000M** for a 1000Base-T connection and the Dual Personality interfaces, and **1000M** for Mini-GBIC uplink ports.
Speed/ Duplex	Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on this port. The choices are **Auto**, **10M/Half Duplex**, **10M/Full Duplex**, **100M/Half Duplex** and **100M/Full Duplex** for a 1000Base-T connection. **1000M/Full Duplex** is supported by both 1000Base-T (copper) and 1000Base-X (fiber-optic) connections. Selecting **Auto** (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.
Flow Control	A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. **Flow Control** is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port. The Switch uses IEEE 802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode. IEEE 802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill. Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select **Flow Control** to enable it.

Table 14 Basic Setting > Port Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1p Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See **Priority Queue Assignment** in Table 12 on page 69 for more information.
BPDU Control	Configure the way to treat BPDUs received on this port. You must activate bridging control protocol transparency in the **Switch Setup** screen first. Select **Peer** to process any BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) received on this port. Select **Tunnel** to forward BPDUs received on this port. Select **Discard** to drop any BPDU received on this port. Select **Network** to process a BPDU with no VLAN tag and forward a tagged BPDU.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART III
Advanced Setup

VLAN (79)

Static MAC Forward Setup (99)

Filtering (103)

Spanning Tree Protocol (105)

Bandwidth Control (123)

Broadcast Storm Control (127)

Mirroring (129)

Link Aggregation (131)

Port Authentication (139)

Port Security (145)

Classifier (149)

Policy Rule (157)

Queuing Method (165)

VLAN Stacking (169)

Multicast (175)

Authentication & Accounting (191)

IP Source Guard (205)

Loop Guard (231)

8

VLAN

The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen. This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs.

8.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes for the TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/ length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes for the TCI (Tag Control Information, starting after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and the value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible number of VLAN configurations is 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

8.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware

switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

8.2 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

8.2.1 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

8.2.1.1 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

8.2.2 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

Table 15 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/ deregistration process.

Table 15 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology (continued)

VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable Frame Type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member.

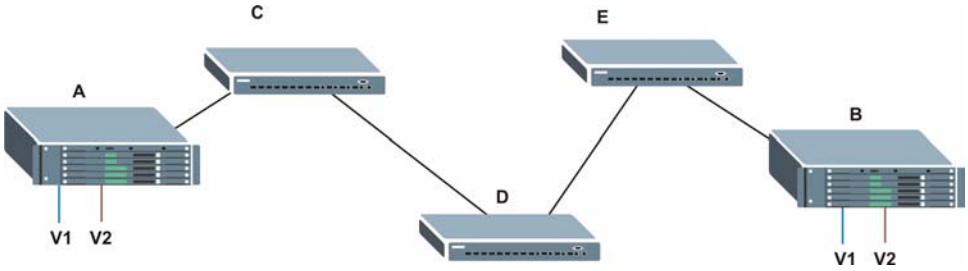
8.3 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

The following figure describes **VLAN Trunking**. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking,** you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically

allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

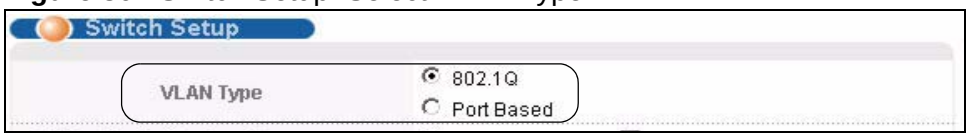
Figure 29 Port VLAN Trunking



8.4 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** screen.

Figure 30 Switch Setup: Select VLAN Type



8.5 Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

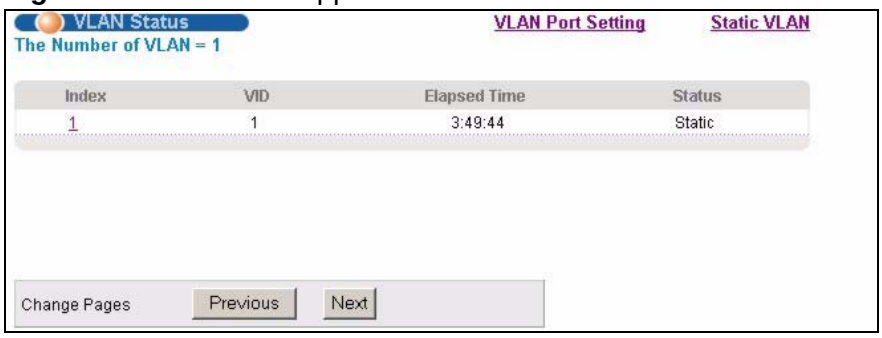
- sent to a VLAN group as normal depending on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

8.5.1 Static VLAN Status

See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more information on Static VLAN. Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 31 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

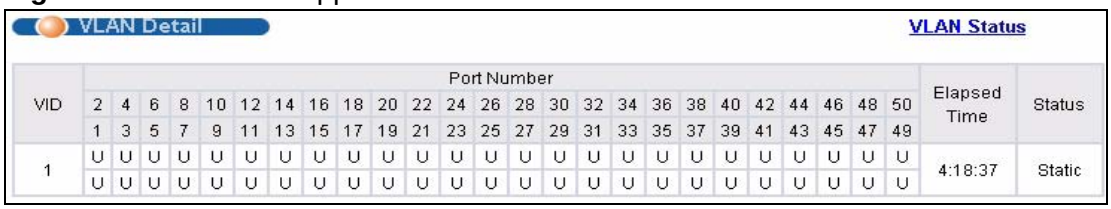
Table 16 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the Switch.
Index	This is the VLAN index number. Click on an index number to view more VLAN details.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch; **dynamic** - using GVRP, **static** - added as a permanent entry or **other** - added in another way such as via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR).
Change Pages	Click **Previous** or **Next** to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

8.5.2 Static VLAN Details

Use this screen to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group. See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more information on static VLAN. Click on an index number in the **VLAN Status** screen to display VLAN details.

Figure 32 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

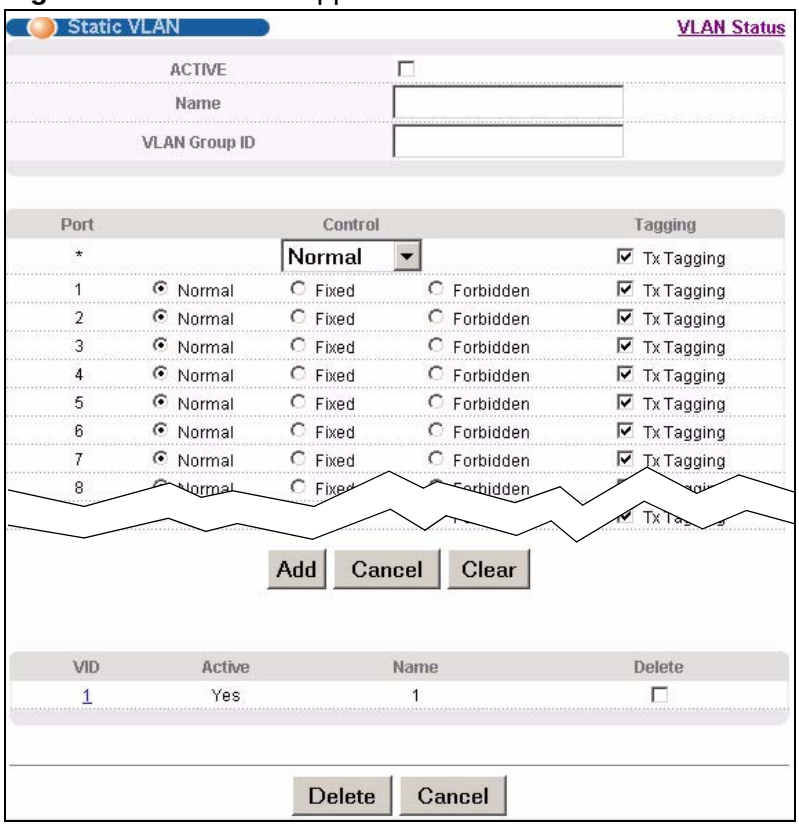
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Status	Click this to go to the **VLAN Status** screen.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as **T**, an untagged port is marked as **U** and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as "**–**".
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch; **dynamic** - using GVRP, **static** - added as a permanent entry or **other** - added in another way such as via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR).

8.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN

Use this screen to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch. See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more information on static VLAN. To configure a

static VLAN, click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 33 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 18 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN group for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

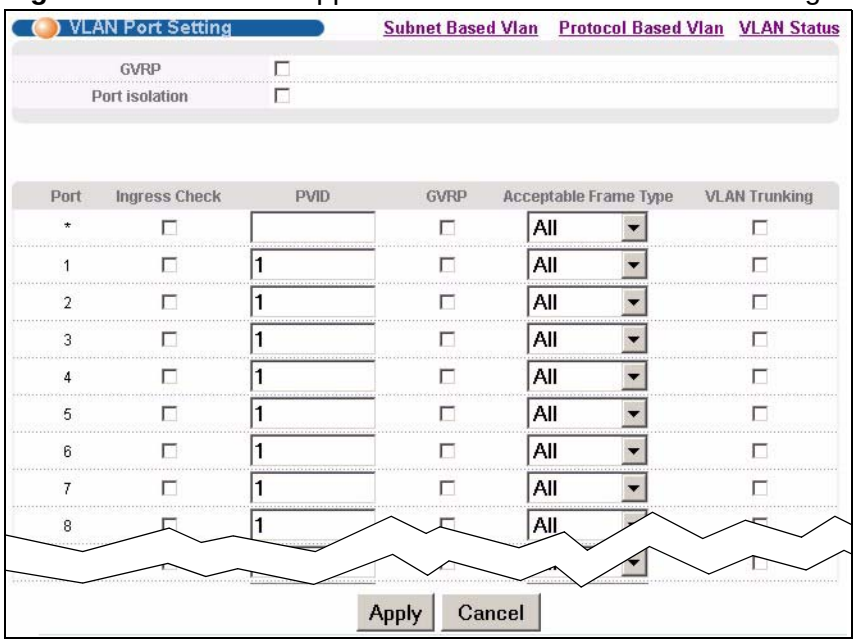
Table 18 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Control	Select **Normal** for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select **Fixed** for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select **Forbidden** if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select **TX Tagging** if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled (**Yes**) or disabled (**No**).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

8.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings

Use the VLAN Port Setting screen to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port. See Section 8.1 on page 79 for more information on static VLAN. Click the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

Figure 34 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.
Port Isolation	**Port Isolation** allows each port to communicate only with the CPU management port and the uplink ports but not communicate with each other. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 19 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Ingress Check	If this check box is selected for a port, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set. Clear this check box to disable ingress filtering.
PVID	Enter a number between 1and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.
GVRP	Select this check box to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are **All**, **Tag Only** and **Untag Only**. Select **All** from the drop-down list box to accept both untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select **Tag Only** to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select **Untag Only** to accept only untagged frames on this port.
VLAN Trunking	Enable **VLAN Trunking** on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the Switch.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.6 Subnet Based VLANs

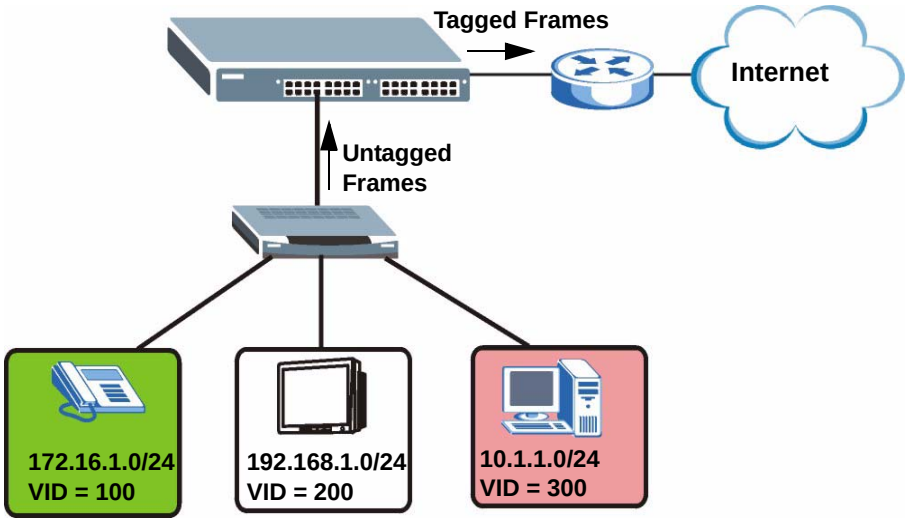
Subnet based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify. When a frame is received on a port, the Switch checks if a tag is added already and the IP subnet it came from. The untagged packets from the same IP subnet are then placed in the same subnet based VLAN. One advantage of using subnet based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic from the same IP subnet.

For example, an ISP (Internet Service Provider) may divide different types of services it provides to customers into different IP subnets. Traffic for voice services is designated for IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24, video for 192.168.1.0/24 and data for 10.1.1.0/24. The Switch can then be configured to group incoming traffic based on the source IP subnet of incoming frames.

You can then configure a subnet based VLAN with priority 6 and VID of 100 for traffic received from IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24 (voice services). You can also have a subnet based VLAN with priority 5 and VID of 200 for traffic received from IP subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (video services). Lastly, you can configure VLAN with priority 3 and VID of 300 for traffic received from IP subnet 10.1.1.0/24 (data

services). All untagged incoming frames will be classified based on their source IP subnet and prioritized accordingly. That is, video services receive the highest priority and data the lowest.

Figure 35 Subnet Based VLAN Application Example

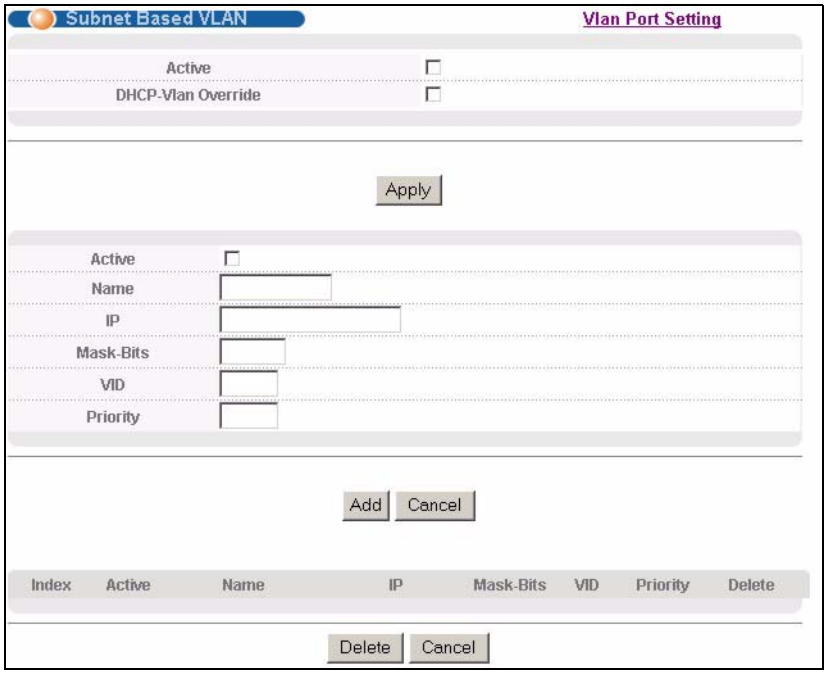


8.7 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN

Click **Subnet Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Subnet based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 36 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this subnet based VLANs on the Switch.
DHCP-Vlan Override	When DHCP snooping is enabled DHCP clients can renew their IP address through the DHCP VLAN or via another DHCP server on the subnet based VLAN. Select this checkbox to force the DHCP clients in this IP subnet to obtain their IP addresses through the DHCP VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Check this box to activate the IP subnet VLAN you are creating or editing.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this subnet based VLAN.
IP	Enter the IP address of the subnet for which you want to configure this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	Enter the bit number of the subnet mask. To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary format and add all the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1s in binary. There are three 255s, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).

Table 20 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN with which the untagged frames from the IP subnet specified in this subnet based VLAN are tagged. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications > VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this subnet based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing subnet based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the subnet based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field shows the name the subnet based VLAN.
IP	This field shows the IP address of the subnet for this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the subnet mask in bit number format for this subnet based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the frames which belong to this subnet based VLAN.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this subnet based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the subnet based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.8 Protocol Based VLANs

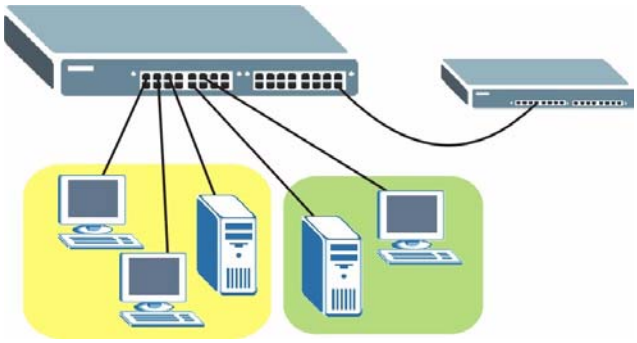
Protocol based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify. When an upstream frame is received on a port (configured for a protocol based VLAN), the Switch checks if a tag is added already and its protocol. The untagged packets of the same protocol are then placed in the same protocol based VLAN. One advantage of using protocol based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic of the same protocol.

Note: Protocol based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

For example, ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 belong to static VLAN 100, and ports 4, 5, 6, 7 belong to static VLAN 120. You can configure a protocol based VLAN A with priority 3 for ARP traffic received on port 1, 2 and 3. You can also have a protocol based VLAN B with priority 2 for Apple Talk traffic received on port 6 and 7. All upstream ARP traffic from port 1, 2 and 3 will be grouped together, and all upstream Apple

Talk traffic from port 6 and 7 will be in another group and have higher priority than ARP traffic when they go through the uplink port to a backbone switch C.

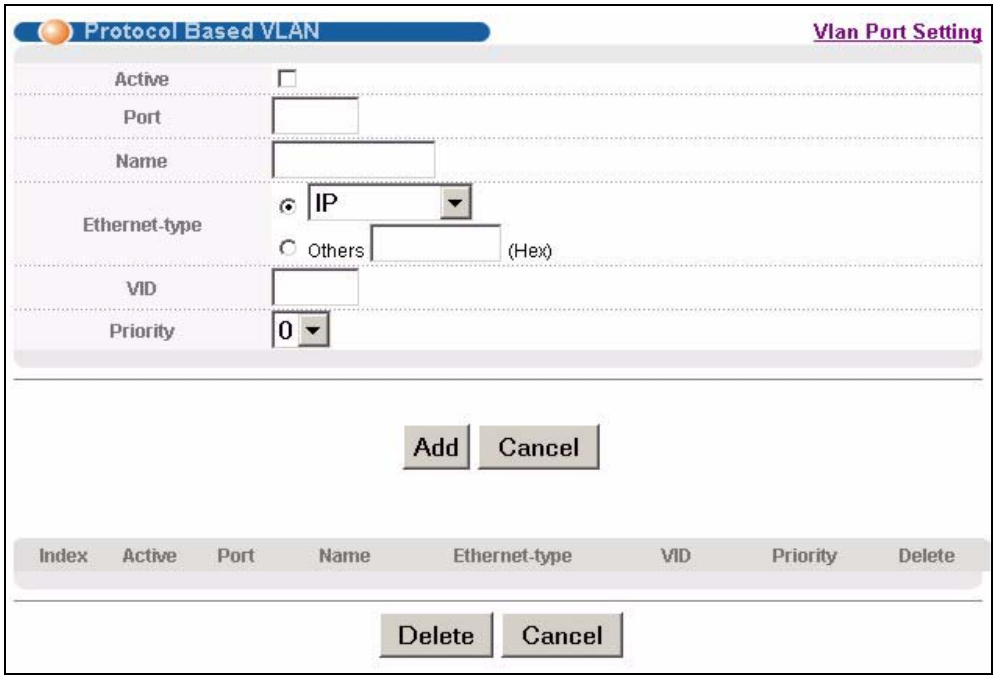
Figure 37 Protocol Based VLAN Application Example



8.9 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN

Click **Protocol Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 38 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this protocol based VLAN.
Port	Type a port number to be included in this protocol based VLAN. This port must belong to a static VLAN in order to participate in a protocol based VLAN. See Chapter 8 on page 79 for more details on setting up VLANs.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	Use the drop down list box to select a predefined protocol to be included in this protocol based VLAN or select **Others** and type the protocol number in hexadecimal notation. For example, the IP protocol in hexadecimal notation is 0800, and Novell IPX protocol is 8137. Note: Protocols in the hexadecimal number range of 0x0000 to 0x05ff are not allowed to be used for protocol based VLANs.
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications > VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch will assign to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this protocol based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing protocol based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the protocol based VLAN is active or not.
Port	This field shows which port belongs to this protocol based VLAN.
Name	This field shows the name the protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	This field shows which Ethernet protocol is part of this protocol based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the port.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this protocol based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the protocol based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.10 Create an IP-based VLAN Example

This example shows you how to create an IP VLAN which includes ports 1, 4 and 8. Follow these steps using the screen below:

1 Activate this protocol based VLAN.

2 Type the port number you want to include in this protocol based VLAN. Type **1**.

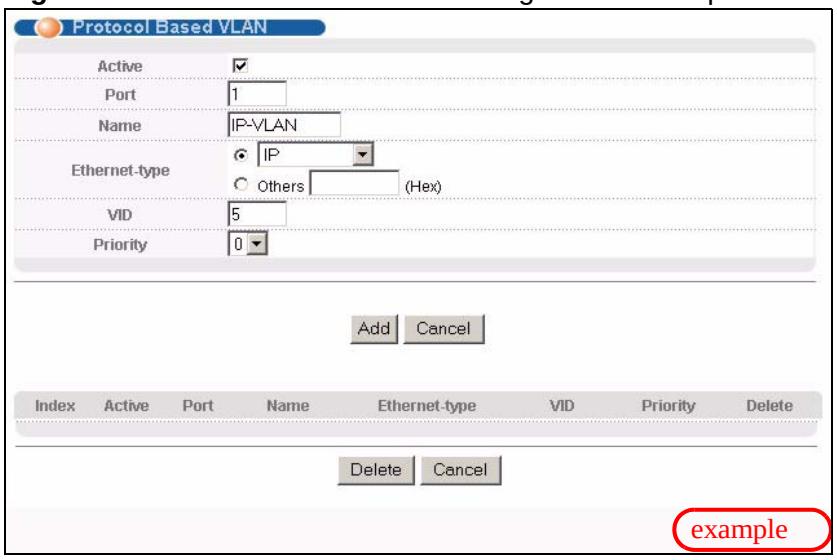
3 Give this protocol-based VLAN a descriptive name. Type **IP-VLAN**.

4 Select the protocol. Leave the default value **IP**.

5 Type the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN. In our example we already created a static VLAN with an ID of 5. Type **5**.

6 Leave the priority set to **0** and click **Add**.

Figure 39 Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example



To add more ports to this protocol based VLAN.

1 Click the index number of the protocol based VLAN entry. Click **1**

2 Change the value in the **Port** field to the next port you want to add.

3 Click **Add**.

8.11 Port-based VLAN Setup

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the Switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the Switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

Note: In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

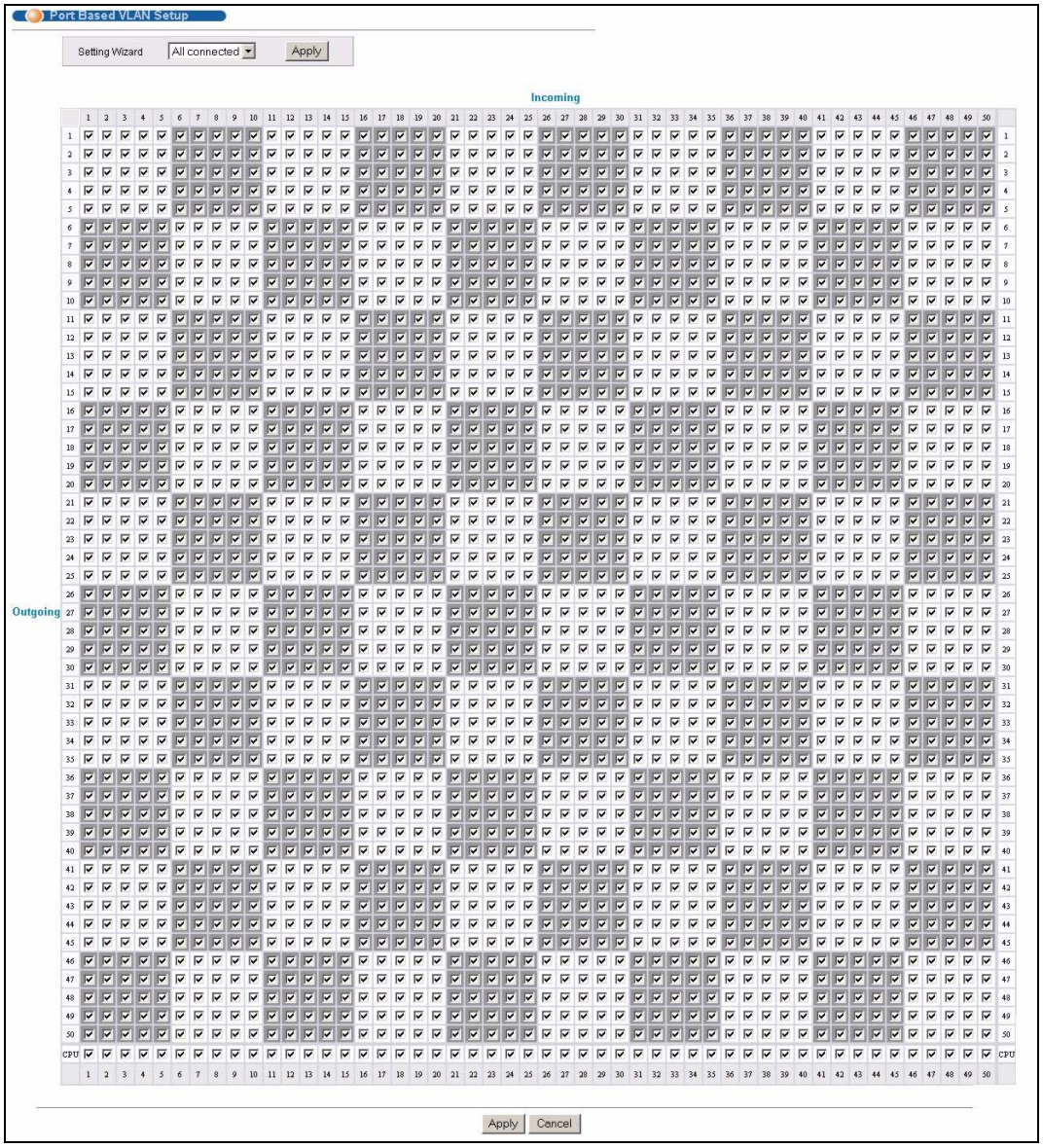
The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

8.11.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen and then click **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the following screen. Select either **All Connected** or **Port Isolated** from the drop-down list depending on your VLAN and VLAN security requirements. If VLAN members need to communicate directly with each other, then select **All Connected**. Select **Port Isolated** if you want to restrict users from communicating directly. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

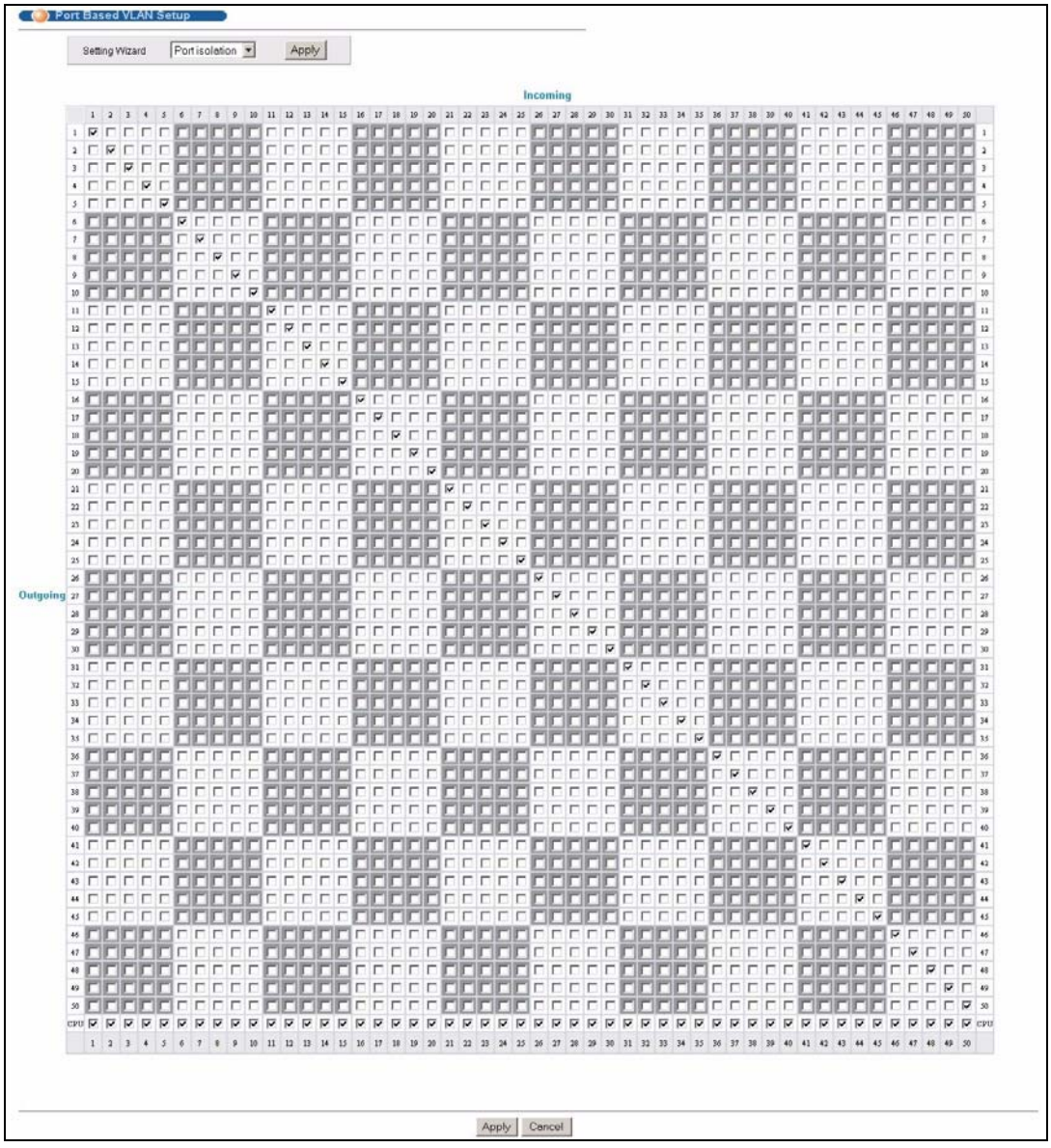
The following screen shows users on a port-based, all-connected VLAN configuration.

Figure 40 Advanced Application > VLAN > Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)



The following screen shows users on a port-based, port-isolated VLAN configuration.

Figure 41 Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Setting Wizard	Choose **All connected** or **Port isolation**. **All connected** means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure. **Port isolation** means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure. After you make your selection, click **Apply** (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.
Incoming	These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Outgoing	These are the egress ports. An egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9

Static MAC Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

9.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on MAC addresses of devices on your network.

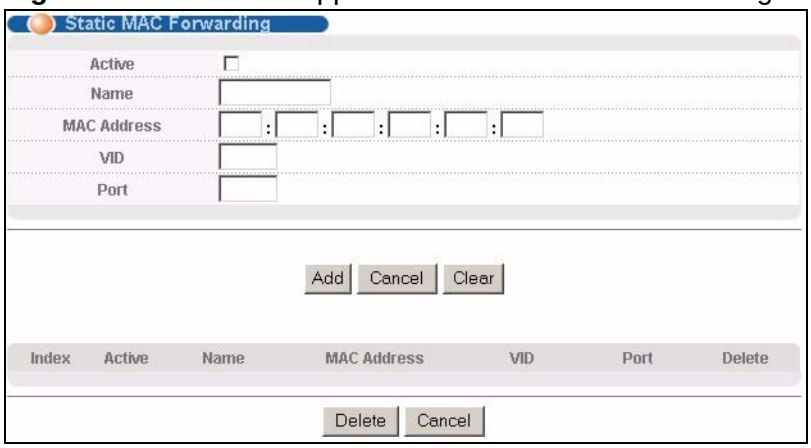
9.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allows only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the Switch. See Chapter 17 on page 145 for more information on port security.

Click **Advanced Applications > Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 42 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 23 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Note: Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Enter the port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click **Add** to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.

Table 23 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

10 Filtering

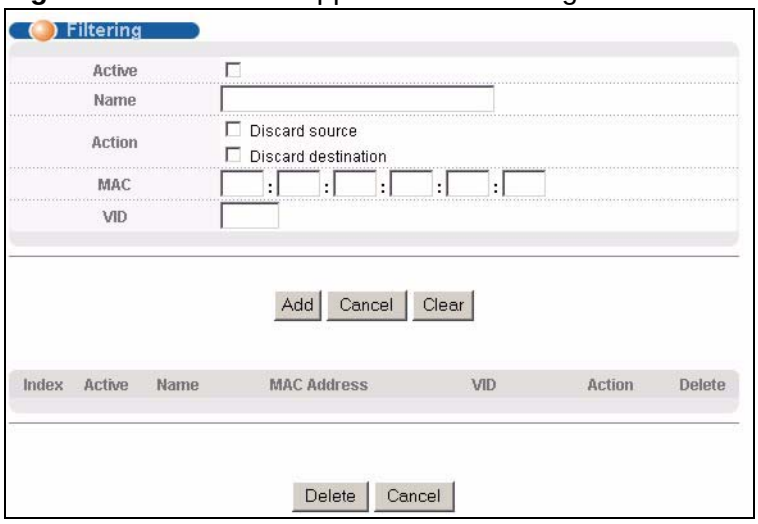
This chapter discusses MAC address port filtering.

10.1 Configure a Filtering Rule

Configure the Switch to filter traffic based on the traffic's source, destination MAC addresses and/or VLAN group (ID).

Click **Advanced Application** > **Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 43 Advanced Application > Filtering



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 24 Advanced Application > FIltering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification only.

Table 24 Advanced Application > FIltering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Action	Select **Discard source** to drop frames from the source MAC address (specified in the **MAC** field). The Switch can still send frames to the MAC address. Select **Discard destination** to drop frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the **MAC** address). The Switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address. Select **Discard source** and **Discard destination** to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the **MAC** field.
MAC	Type a MAC address in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the VLAN group identification number.
Action	This field displays **Discard source** if you have chosen to drop frames from the source MAC address. If you have chosen to drop frames to the destination MAC address then **Discard destination** will be displayed. If both have been activated then **Discard both** will be displayed.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the **Delete** column.

11

Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

11.1 STP/RSTP Overview

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (R)STP-compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge and then the root bridge notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

11.1.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The recommended cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Table 25 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the bridge communicates with the root through the root port. The root port is the port on this Switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this Switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

11.1.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

11.1.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 26 STP Port States

PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

11.1.4 Multiple STP

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s) is backwards compatible with STP/RSTP and addresses the limitations of existing spanning tree protocols (STP and RSTP) in networks to include the following features:

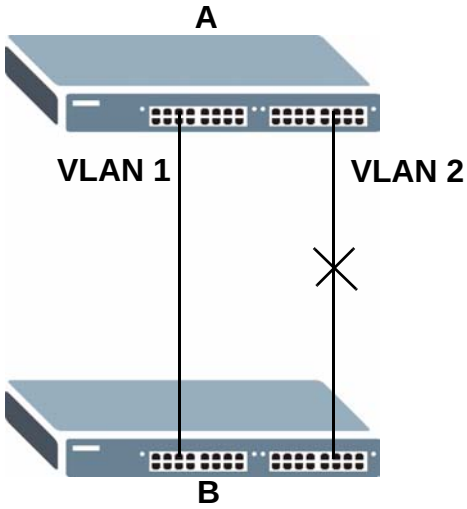
- One Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) that represents the entire network's connectivity.
- Grouping of multiple bridges (or switching devices) into regions that appear as one single bridge on the network.
- A VLAN can be mapped to a specific Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTI allows multiple VLANs to use the same spanning tree.
- Load-balancing is possible as traffic from different VLANs can use distinct paths in a region.

11.1.4.1 MSTP Network Example

The following figure shows a network example where two VLANs are configured on the two switches. If the switches are using STP or RSTP, the link for VLAN 2 will be

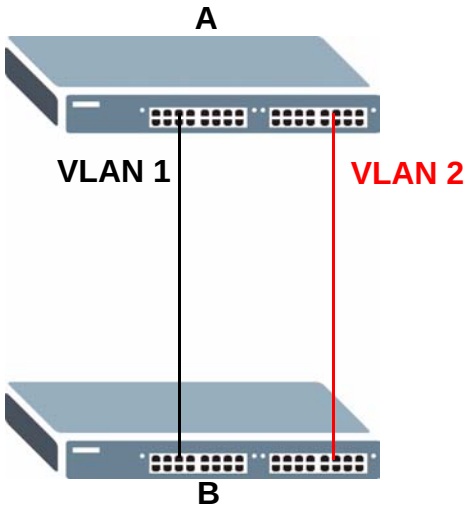
blocked as STP and RSTP allow only one link in the network and block the redundant link.

Figure 44 STP/RSTP Network Example



With MSTP, VLANs 1 and 2 are mapped to different spanning trees in the network. Thus traffic from the two VLANs travel on different paths. The following figure shows the network example using MSTP.

Figure 45 MSTP Network Example



11.1.4.2 MST Region

An MST region is a logical grouping of multiple network devices that appears as a single device to the rest of the network. Each MSTP-enabled device can only belong to one MST region. When BPDUs enter an MST region, external path cost (of paths outside this region) is increased by one. Internal path cost (of paths within this region) is increased by one when BPDUs traverse the region.

Devices that belong to the same MST region are configured to have the same MSTP configuration identification settings. These include the following parameters:

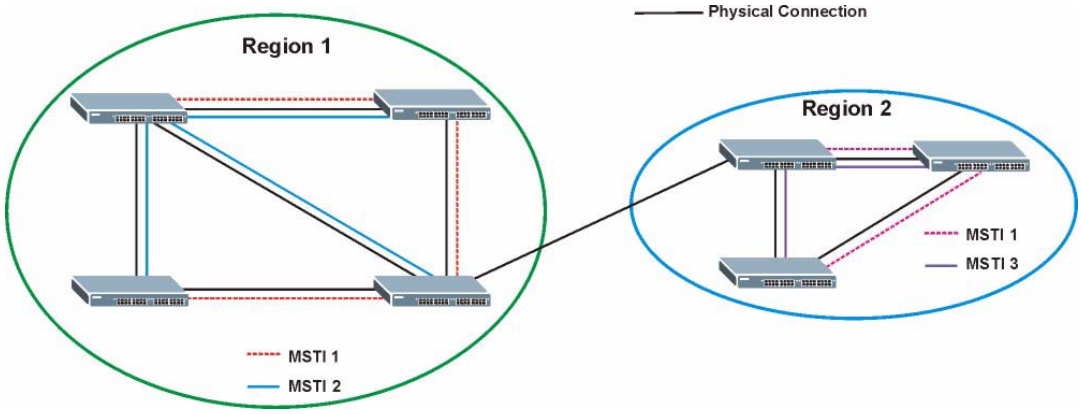
- Name of the MST region
- Revision level as the unique number for the MST region
- VLAN-to-MST Instance mapping

11.1.4.3 MST Instance

An MST Instance (MSTI) is a spanning tree instance. VLANs can be configured to run on a specific MSTI. Each created MSTI is identified by a unique number (known as an MST ID) known internally to a region. Thus an MSTI does not span across MST regions.

The following figure shows an example where there are two MST regions. Regions 1 and 2 have 2 spanning tree instances.

Figure 46 MSTIs in Different Regions

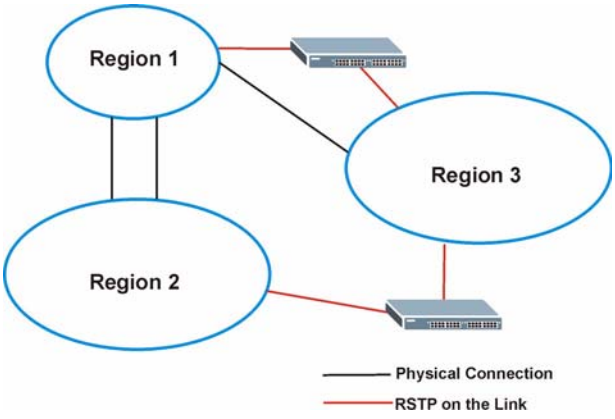


11.1.4.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

A CIST represents the connectivity of the entire network and it is equivalent to a spanning tree in an STP/RSTP. The CIST is the default MST instance (MSTID 0). Any VLANs that are not members of an MST instance are members of the CIST. In an MSTP-enabled network, there is only one CIST that runs between MST regions

and single spanning tree devices. A network may contain multiple MST regions and other network segments running RSTP.

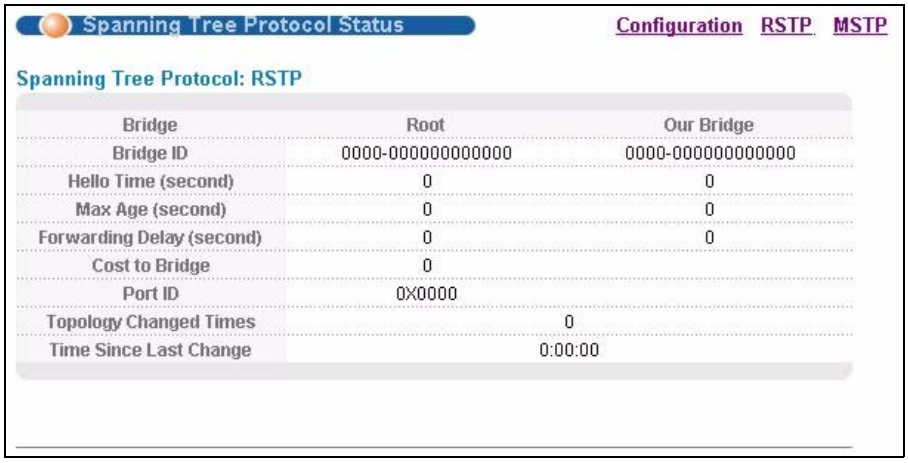
Figure 47 MSTP and Legacy RSTP Network Example



11.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen

The Spanning Tree Protocol status screen changes depending on what standard you choose to implement on your network. Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** to see the screen as shown.

Figure 48 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol



This screen differs depending on which STP mode (RSTP or MSTP) you configure on the Switch. This screen is described in detail in the section that follows the configuration section for each STP mode. Click **Configuration** to activate one of the STP standards on the Switch.

11.3 Spanning Tree Configuration

Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Click **Configuration** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol**.

Figure 49 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

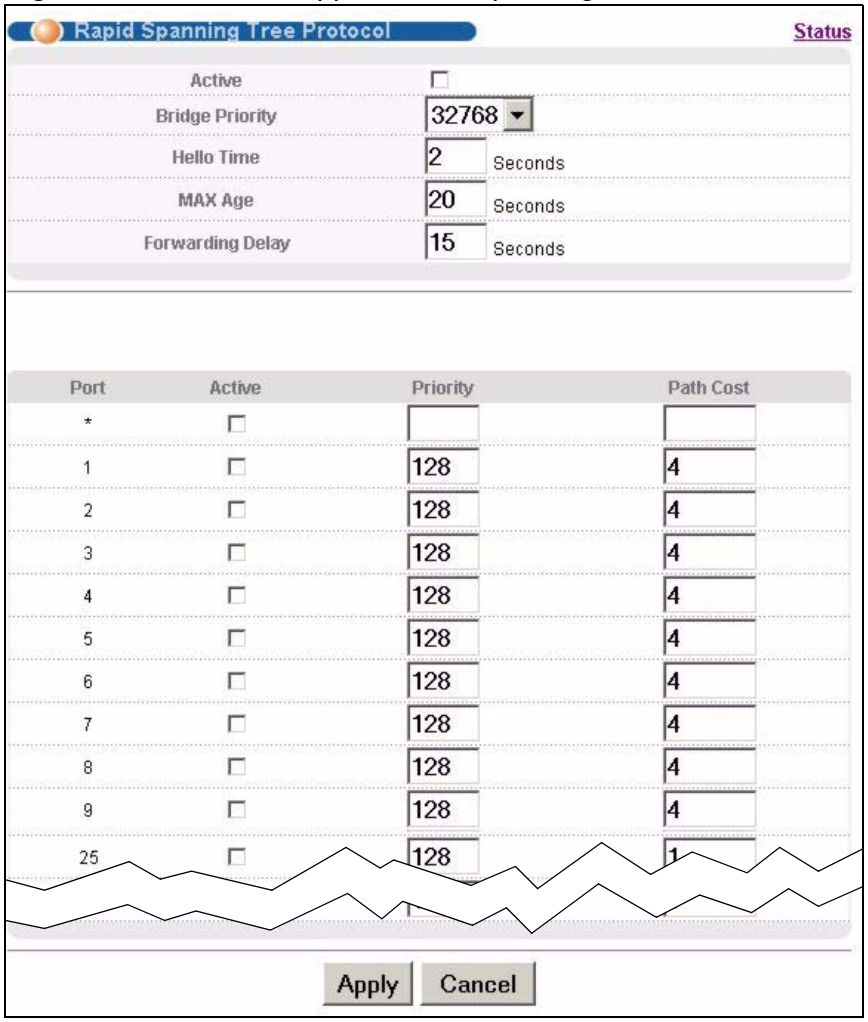
Table 27 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Mode	You can activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Select **Rapid Spanning Tree** or **Multiple Spanning Tree**. See Section 11.1 on page 105 for background information on STP.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

Use this screen to configure RSTP settings, see Section 11.1 on page 105 for more information on RSTP. Click **RSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen.

Figure 50 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **RSTP Status** screen (see Figure 51 on page 114).
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP. Clear this checkbox to disable RSTP. Note: You must also activate **Rapid Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** > **Configuration** screen to enable RSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 28 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP (continued)

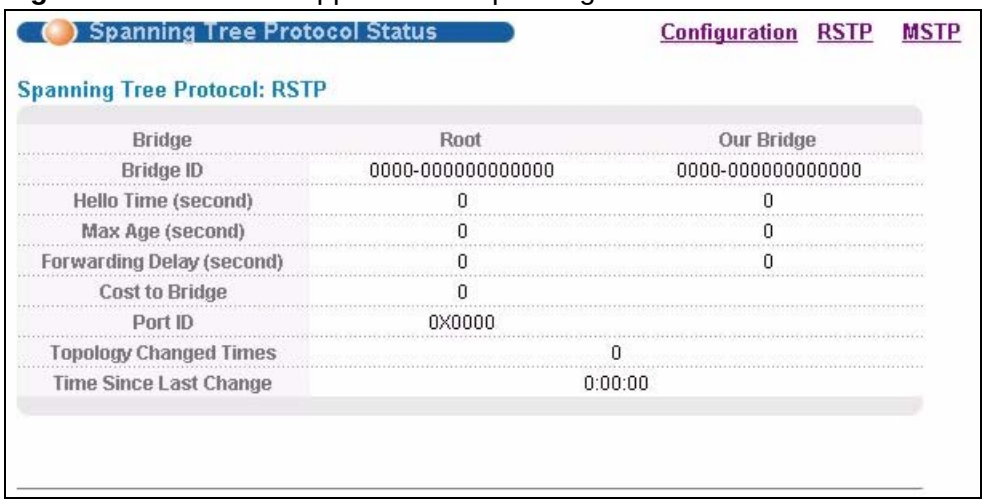
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP on this port.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 25 on page 106 for more information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 11.1 on page 105 for more information on RSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate RSTP on the Switch.

Figure 51 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

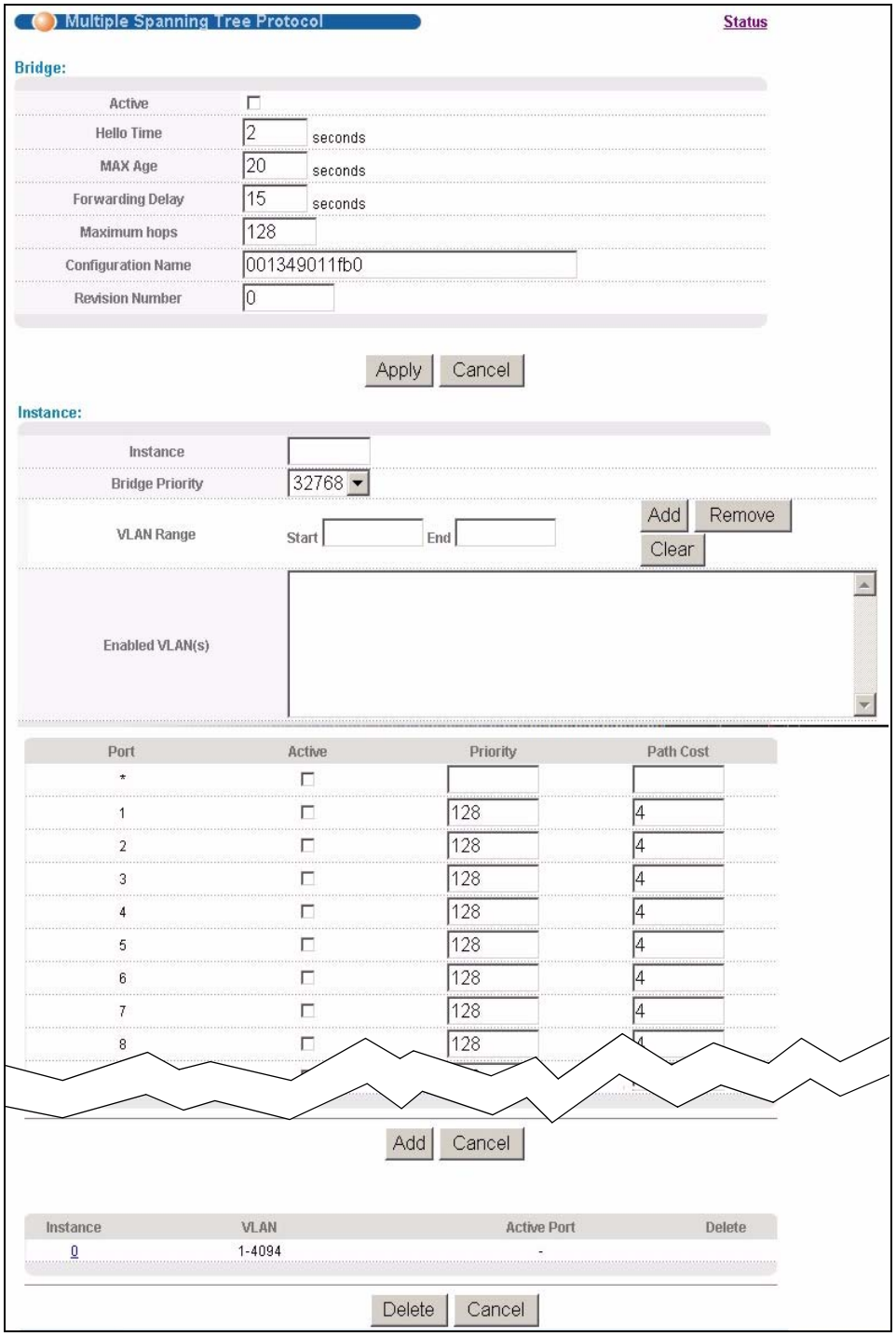
Table 29 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **RSTP** to edit RSTP settings on the Switch.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of the bridge priority plus the MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). See Section 11.1.3 on page 107 for information on port states. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

11.6 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MSTP, click **MSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See Section 11.1.4 on page 107 for more information on MSTP.

Figure 52 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **MSTP Status** screen (see Figure 53 on page 119).
Active	Select this check box to activate MSTP on the Switch. Clear this checkbox to disable MSTP on the Switch. Note: You must also activate **Multiple Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration** screen to enable MSTP on the Switch.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
MaxAge	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Maximum hops	Enter the number of hops (between 1 and 255) in an MSTP region before the BPDU is discarded and the port information is aged.
Configuration Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) of an MST region.
Revision Number	Enter a number to identify a region's configuration. Devices must have the same revision number to belong to the same region.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	Use this section to configure MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) settings.
Instance	Enter the number you want to use to identify this MST instance on the Switch. The Switch supports instance numbers 0-16.

Table 30 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bridge Priority	Set the priority of the Switch for the specific spanning tree instance. The lower the number, the more likely the Switch will be chosen as the root bridge within the spanning tree instance. Enter priority values between 0 and 61440 in increments of 4096 (thus valid values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440).
VLAN Range	Enter the start of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **Start** field. Enter the end of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **End** field. Next click: • **Add** - to add this range of VLAN(s) to be mapped to the MST instance. • **Remove** - to remove this range of VLAN(s) from being mapped to the MST instance. • **Clear** - to remove all VLAN(s) from being mapped to this MST instance.
Enabled VLAN(s)	This field displays which VLAN(s) are mapped to this MST instance.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to add this port to the MST instance.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in the Switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see Table 25 on page 106 for more information.
Add	Click **Add** to save this MST instance to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	This field displays the ID of an MST instance.
VLAN	This field displays the VID (or VID ranges) to which the MST instance is mapped.
Active Port	This field display the ports configured to participate in the MST instance.

Table 30 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

11.7 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 11.1.4 on page 107 for more information on MSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MSTP on the Switch.

Figure 53 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **MSTP** to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
CST	This section describes the Common Spanning Tree settings.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Configuration Name	This field displays the configuration name for this MST region.
Revision Number	This field displays the revision number for this MST region.
Configuration Digest	A configuration digest is generated from the VLAN-MSTI mapping information. This field displays the 16-octet signature that is included in an MSTP BPDU. This field displays the digest when MSTP is activated on the system.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.
Instance:	These fields display the MSTI to VLAN mapping. In other words, which VLANs run on each spanning tree instance.
Instance	This field displays the MSTI ID.
VLAN	This field displays which VLANs are mapped to an MSTI.
MSTI	Select the MST instance settings you want to view.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the MST instance. **Our Bridge** is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.

Table 31 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internal Cost	This is the path cost from the root port in this MST instance to the regional root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the MST instance.

12

Bandwidth Control

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

12.1 Bandwidth Control Overview

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.

12.1.1 CIR and PIR

The Committed Information Rate (CIR) is the guaranteed bandwidth for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The Peak Information Rate (PIR) is the maximum bandwidth allowed for the incoming traffic flow on a port when there is no network congestion.

The CIR and PIR should be set for all ports that use the same uplink bandwidth. If the CIR is reached, packets are sent at the rate up to the PIR. When network congestion occurs, packets through the ingress port exceeding the CIR will be marked for drop.

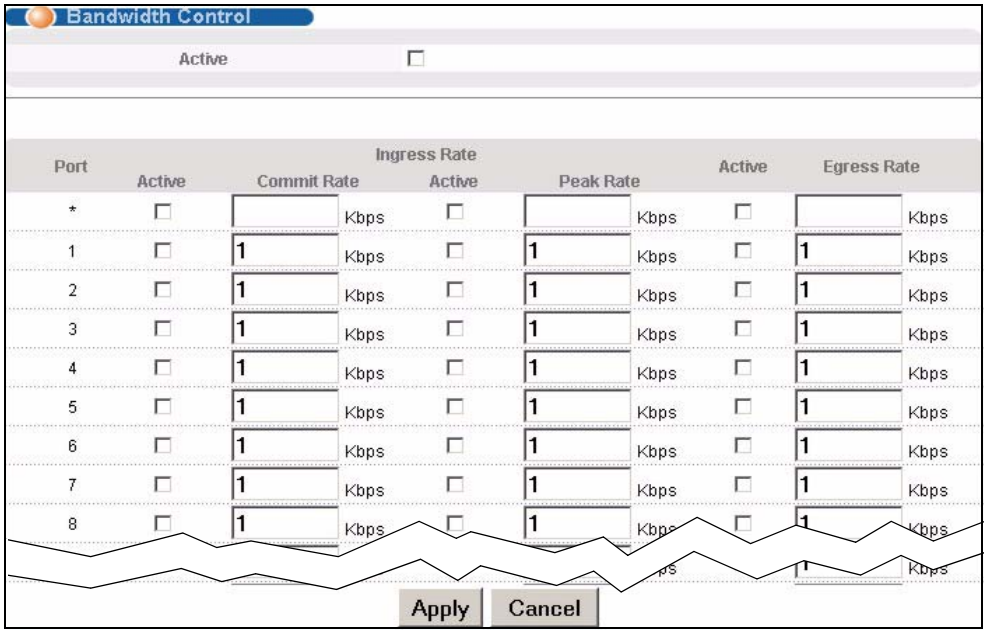
Note: The CIR should be less than the PIR.

Note: The sum of CIRs cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.

12.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

Figure 54 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 32 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Ingress Rate	
Active	Select this check box to activate commit rate limits on this port.
Commit Rate	Specify the guaranteed bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The commit rate should be less than the peak rate. The sum of commit rates cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.
Active	Select this check box to activate peak rate limits on this port.

Table 32 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Peak Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port.
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13

Broadcast Storm Control

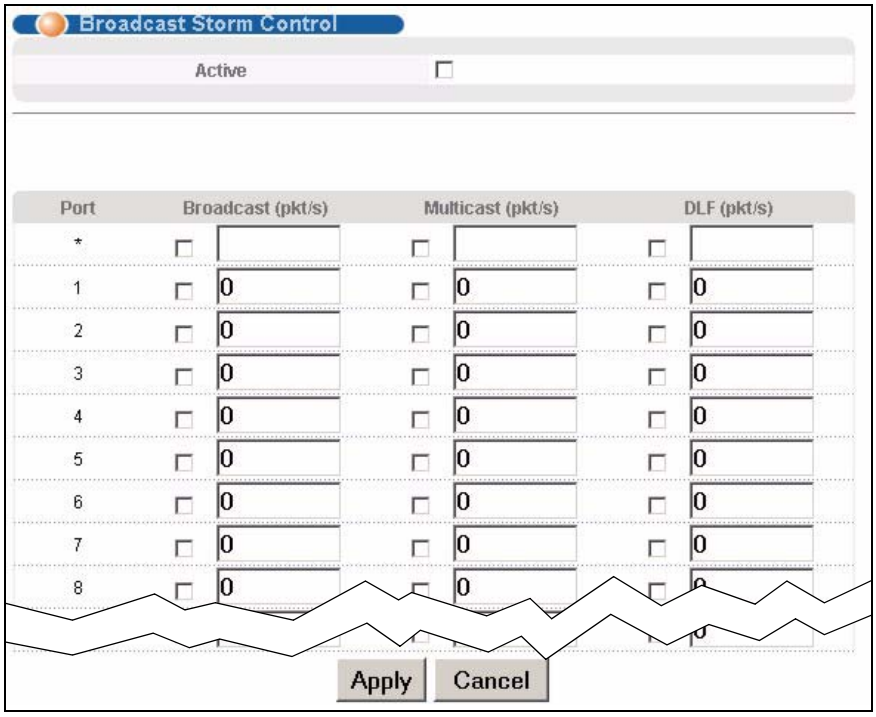
This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

13.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 55 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable traffic storm control on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable this feature.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

14

Mirroring

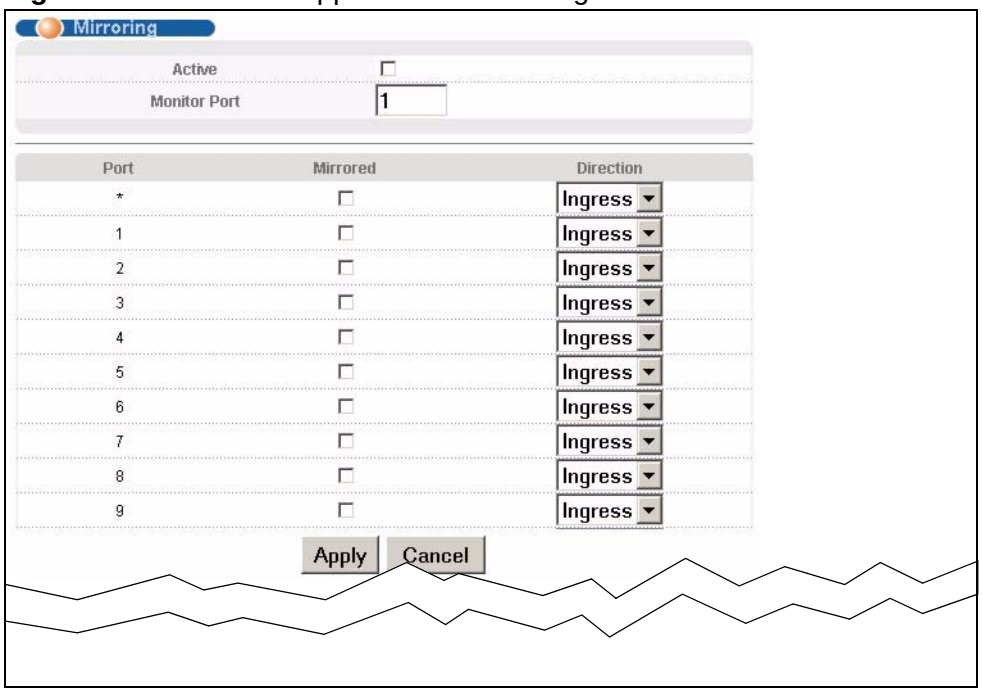
This chapter discusses port mirroring setup screens.

14.1 Port Mirroring Setup

Port mirroring allows you to copy a traffic flow to a monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port without interference.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen. Use this screen to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

Figure 56 Advanced Application > Mirroring



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Advanced Application > Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate port mirroring on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable the feature.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Type the port number of the monitor port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are **Egress** (outgoing), **Ingress** (incoming) and **Both**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

15

Link Aggregation

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

15.1 Link Aggregation Overview

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

The beginning port of each trunk group must be physically connected to form a trunk group.

The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

Note: In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

See Section 15.6 on page 136 for a static port trunking example.

15.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The IEEE 802.3ad standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) for dynamically creating and managing trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups.

LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the “standby” ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

15.2.1 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information[1]:

Table 35 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

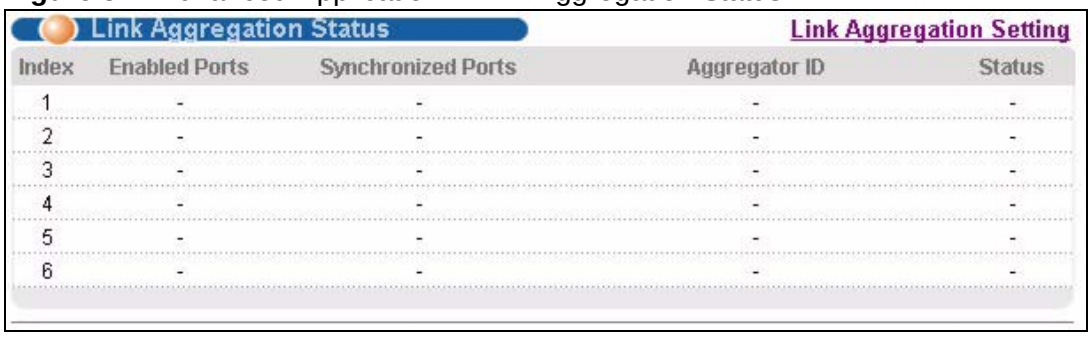
Table 36 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

15.3 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Status** screen displays by default. See Section 15.1 on page 131 for more information.

Figure 57 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status



1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

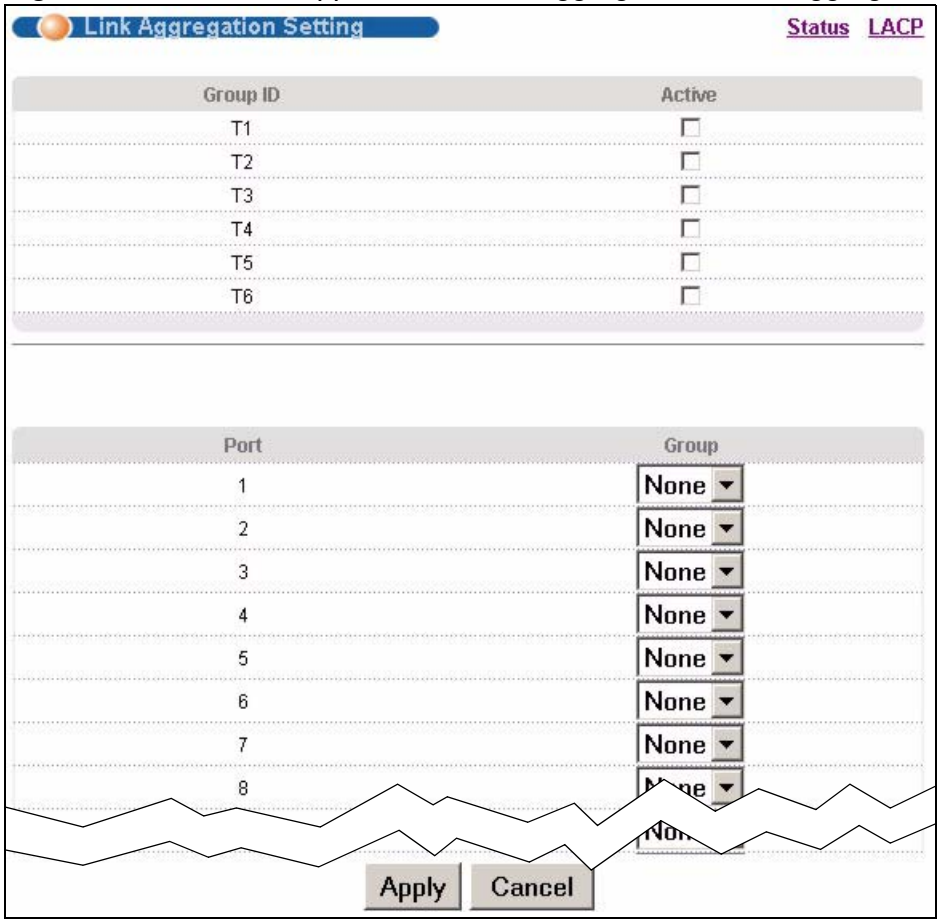
Table 37 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the trunk ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Enabled Port	These are the ports you have configured in the **Link Aggregation** screen to be in the trunk group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.
Aggregator ID	Link Aggregator ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to Section 15.2.1 on page 132 for more information on this field.
Status	This field displays how these ports were added to the trunk group. It displays: • **Static** - if the ports are configured as static members of a trunk group. • **LACP** - if the ports are configured to join a trunk group via LACP.

15.4 Link Aggregation Setting

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting** to display the screen shown next. See Section 15.1 on page 131 for more information on link aggregation.

Figure 58 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Setting	This is the only screen you need to configure to enable static link aggregation.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs.

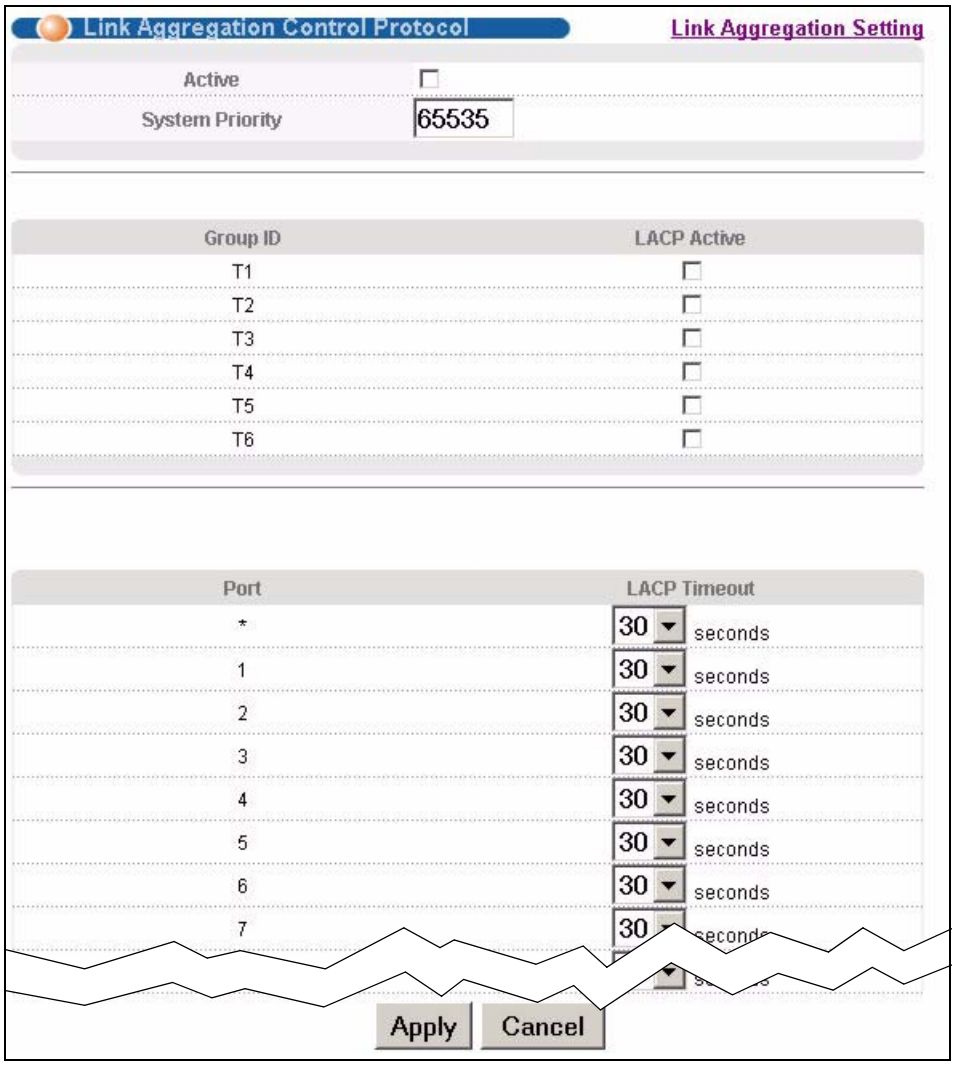
Table 38 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

15.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Click in the **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting** > **LACP** to display the screen shown next. See Section 15.2 on page 131 for more information on dynamic link aggregation.

Figure 59 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

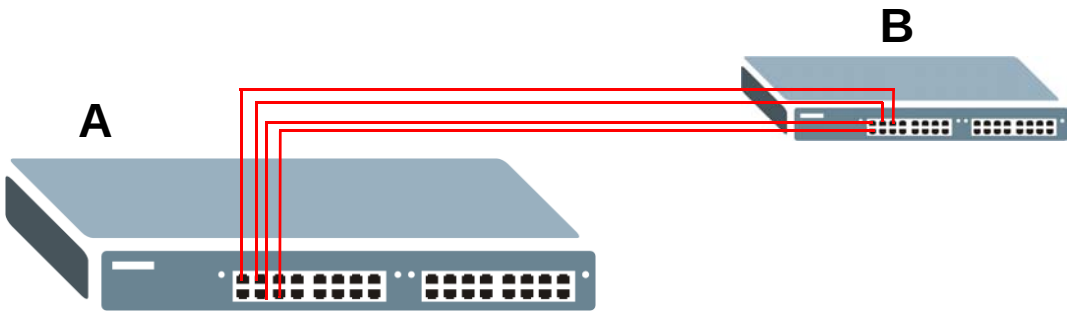
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	Note: Do not configure this screen unless you want to enable dynamic link aggregation.
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP “server”. The LACP “server” controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
LACP Active	Select this option to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be “down” and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

15.6 Static Trunking Example

This example shows you how to create a static port trunk group for ports 2-5.

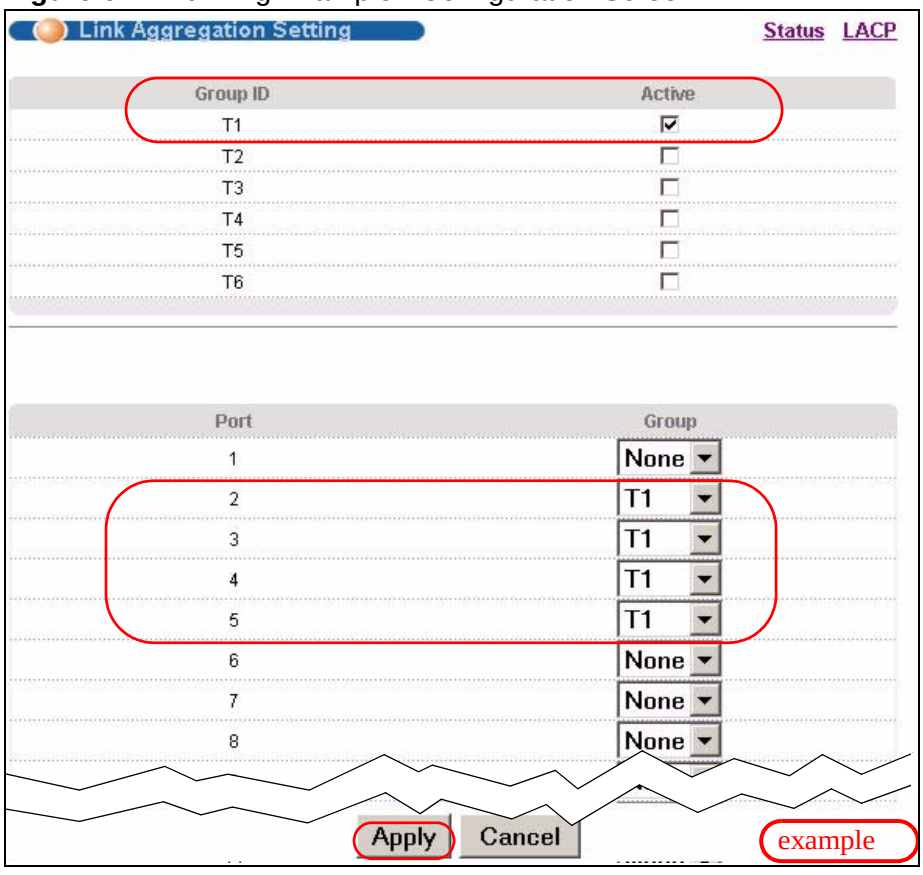
1 **Make your physical connections** - make sure that the ports that you want to belong to the trunk group are connected to the same destination. The following figure shows ports 2-5 on switch **A** connected to switch **B**.

Figure 60 Trunking Example - Physical Connections



2 **Configure static trunking** - Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting**. In this screen activate trunking group **T1** and select the ports that should belong to this group as shown in the figure below. Click **Apply** when you are done.

Figure 61 Trunking Example - Configuration Screen



Your trunk group 1 (**T1**) configuration is now complete; you do not need to go to any additional screens.

16

Port Authentication

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1x and MAC authentication methods.

16.1 Port Authentication Overview

Port authentication is a way to validate access to ports on the Switch to clients based on an external server (authentication server). The Switch supports the following methods for port authentication:

- **IEEE 802.1x**[2] - An authentication server validates access to a port based on a username and password provided by the user.
- **MAC** - An authentication server validates access to a port based on the MAC address and password of the client.

Both types of authentication use the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) protocol to validate users. See Section 23.1.2 on page 192 for more information on configuring your RADIUS server settings.

Note: If you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication and MAC authentication on the same port, the Switch performs IEEE 802.1x authentication first. If a user fails to authenticate via the IEEE 802.1x method, then access to the port is denied.

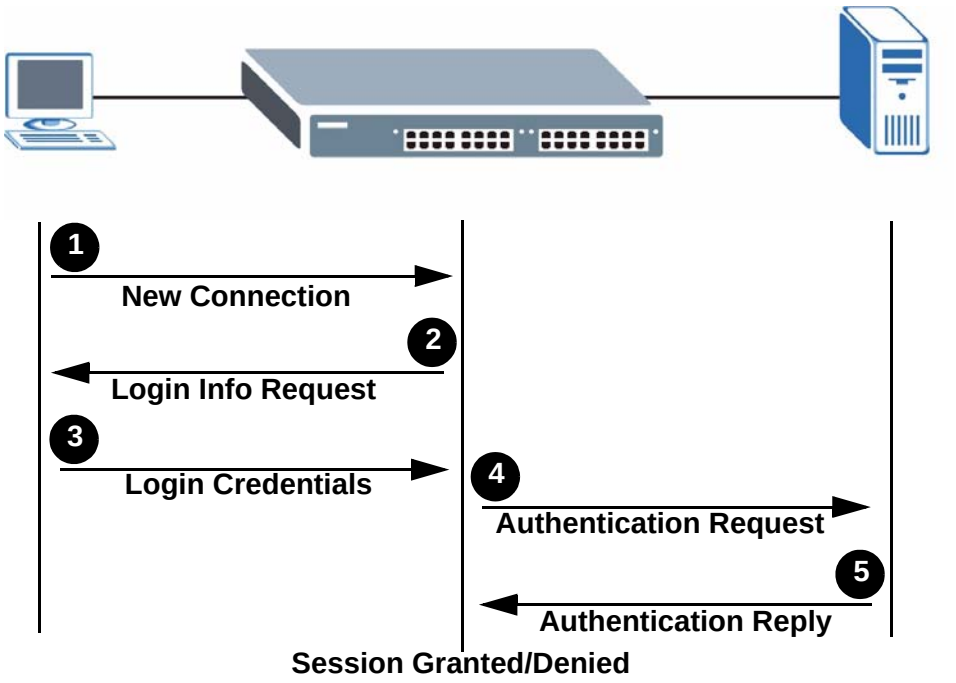
16.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication

The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to a IEEE 802.1x authentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password. When the client provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication

2. At the time of writing, IEEE 802.1x is not supported by all operating systems. See your operating system documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

Figure 62 IEEE 802.1x Authentication Process

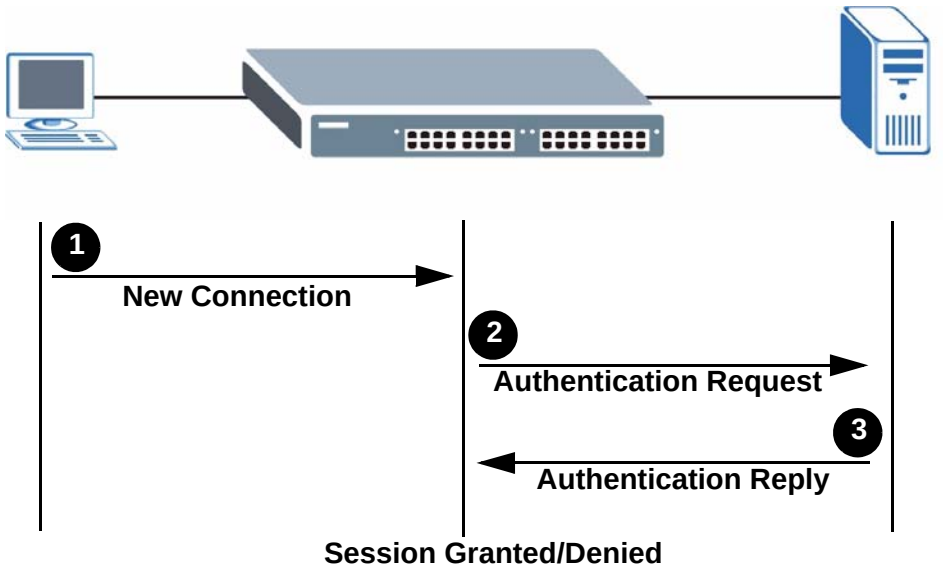


16.1.2 MAC Authentication

MAC authentication works in a very similar way to IEEE 802.1x authentication. The main difference is that the Switch does not prompt the client for login credentials. The login credentials are based on the source MAC address of the

client connecting to a port on the Switch along with a password configured specifically for MAC authentication on the Switch.

Figure 63 MAC Authentication Process



16.2 Port Authentication Configuration

To enable port authentication, first activate the port authentication method(s) you want to use (both on the Switch and the port(s)), then configure the RADIUS server settings in the **Auth and Acct > Radius Server Setup** screen.

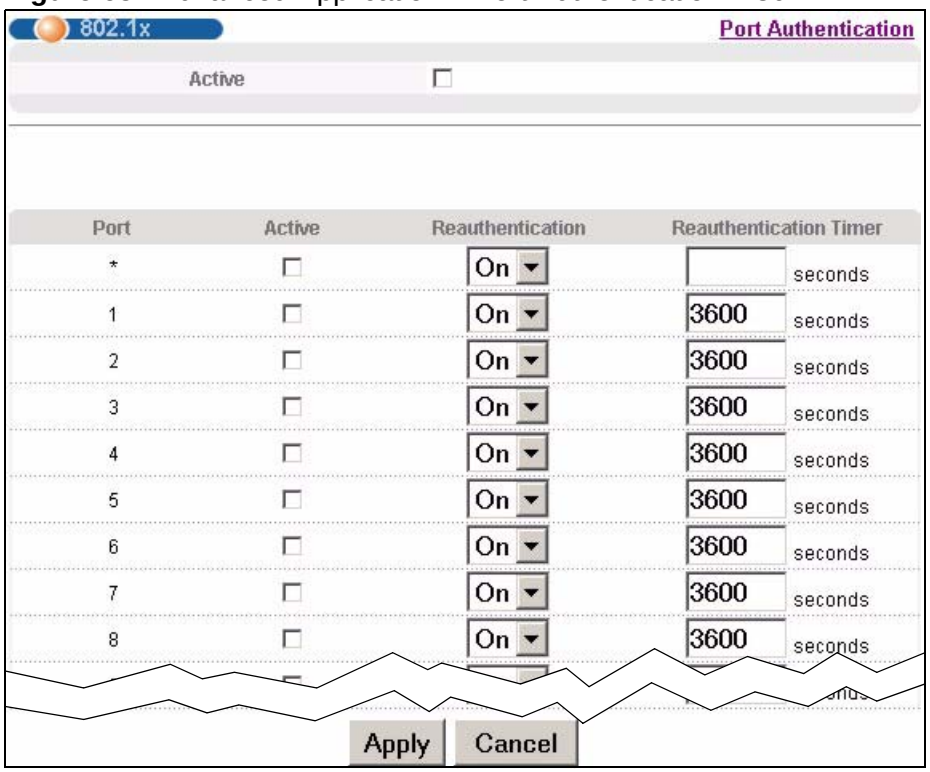
To activate a port authentication method, click **Advanced Application** > **Port Authentication** in the navigation panel. Select a port authentication method in the screen that appears.

Figure 64 Advanced Application > Port Authentication

16.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security

Use this screen to activate IEEE 802.1x security. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 65 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this checkbox to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.

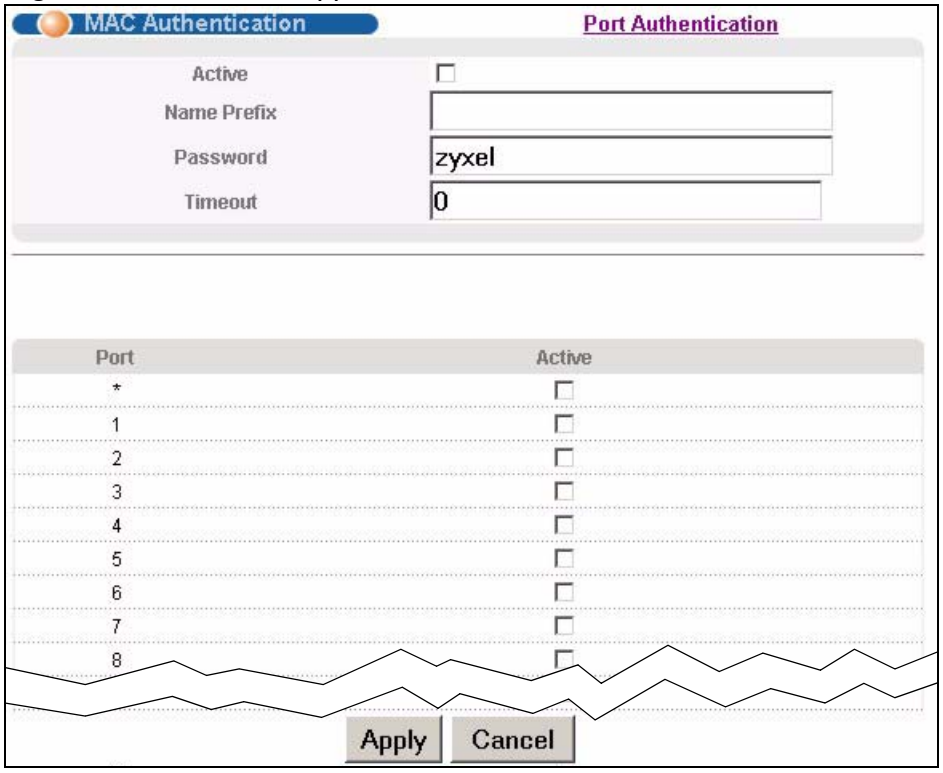
Table 40 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reauthentication	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauthentication Timer	Specify the length of time required to pass before a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

16.2.2 Activate MAC Authentication

Use this screen to activate MAC authentication. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **MAC Authentication** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 66 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit MAC authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Name Prefix	Type the prefix that is appended to all MAC addresses sent to the RADIUS server for authentication. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters. If you leave this field blank, then only the MAC address of the client is forwarded to the RADIUS server.
Password	Type the password the Switch sends along with the MAC address of a client for authentication with the RADIUS server. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time before the Switch allows a client MAC address that fails authentication to try and authenticate again. Maximum time is 3000 seconds. When a client fails MAC authentication, its MAC address is learned by the MAC address table with a status of denied. The timeout period you specify here is the time the MAC address entry stays in the MAC address table until it is cleared. If you specify 0 for the timeout value, then this entry will not be deleted from the MAC address table. Note: If the **Aging Time** in the **Switch Setup** screen is set to a lower value, then it supersedes this setting. See Section 7.5 on page 81.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this checkbox to permit MAC authentication on this port. You must first allow MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17

Port Security

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

17.1 About Port Security

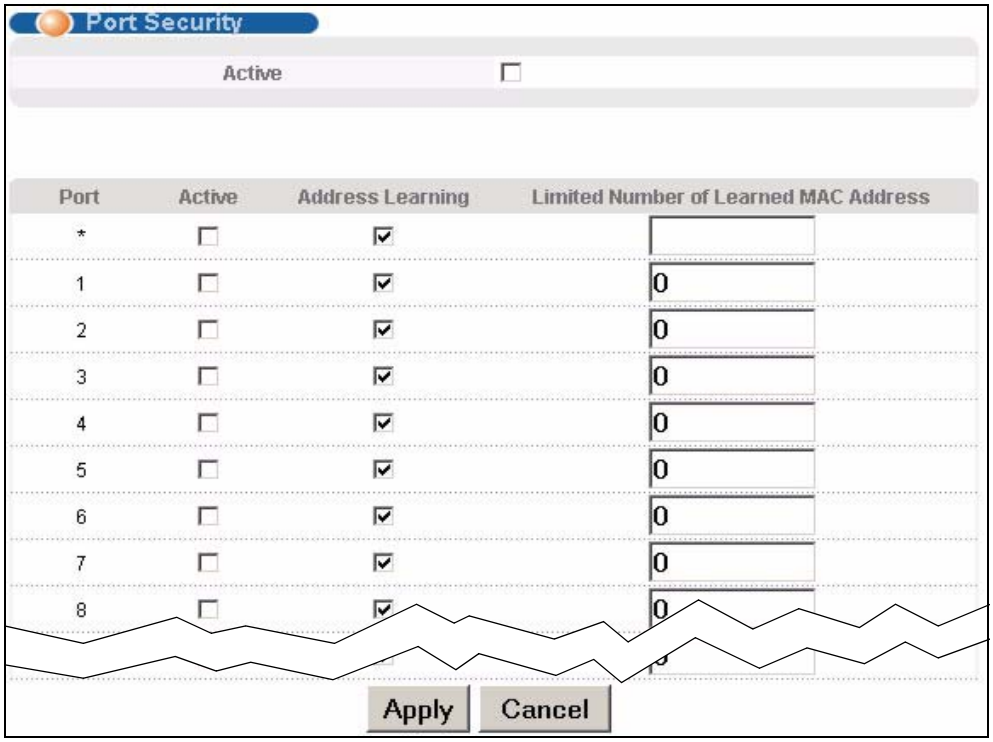
Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch. The Switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable port security together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts. By default, MAC address learning is still enabled even though the port security is not activated.

17.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 67 Advanced Application > Port Security



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable port security on the Switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some of the settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The Switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped. Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The Switch forwards all packets on this port.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Port Security (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device must wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses ages out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the **Switch Setup** screen. The valid range is from “0” to “8192”. “0” means this feature is disabled.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

18

Classifier

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the Switch.

18.1 About the Classifier and QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the Switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

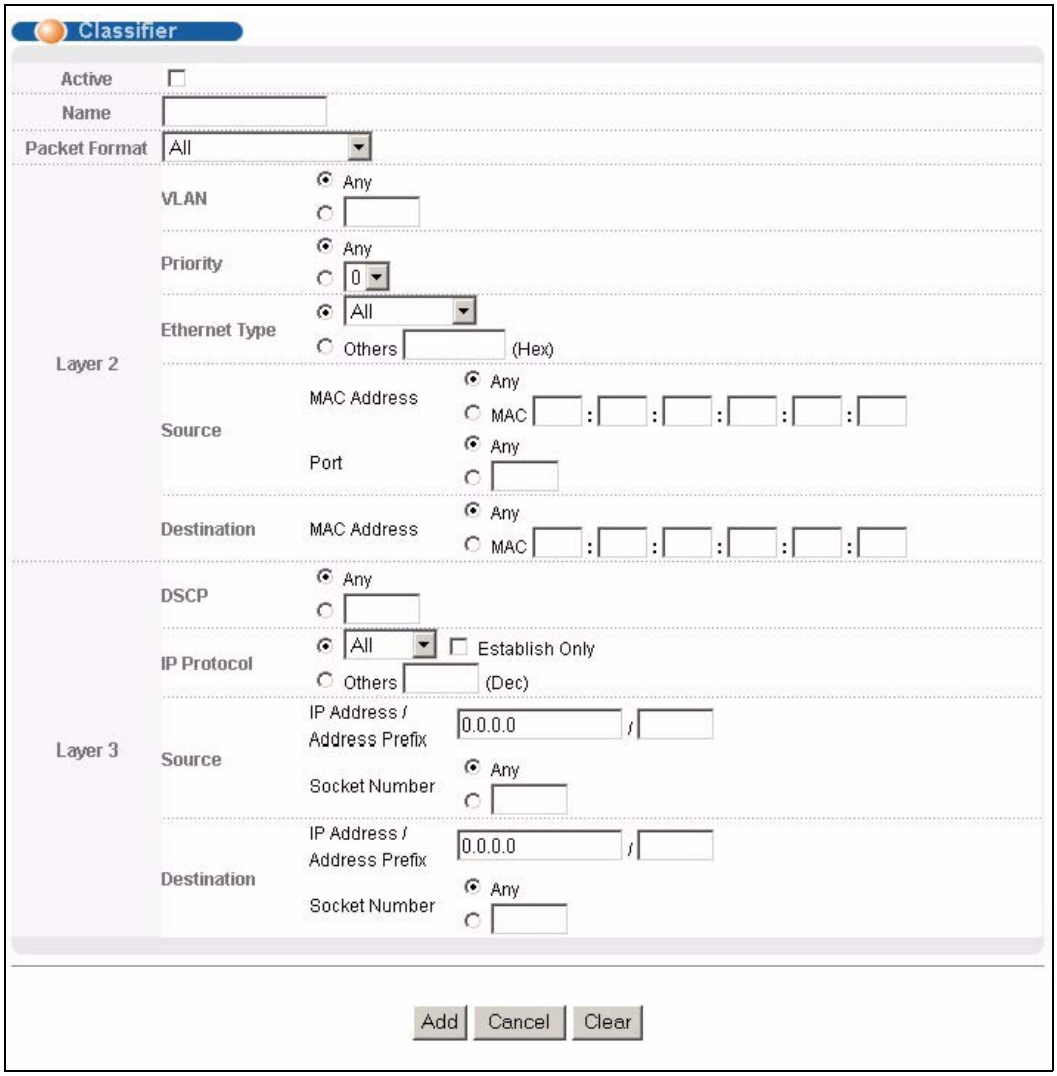
1. Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
2. Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow (refer to Chapter 19 on page 157 to configure policy rules).

18.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to Chapter 19 on page 157.

Click **Advanced Application > Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 68 Advanced Application > Classifier



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Advanced Application > Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.
Packet Format	Specify the format of the packet. Choices are **All**, **802.3 tagged**, **802.3 untagged**, **Ethernet II tagged** and **Ethernet II untagged**. A value of **802.3** indicates that the packets are formatted according to the IEEE 802.3 standards. A value of **Ethernet II** indicates that the packets are formatted according to RFC 894, Ethernet II encapsulation.

Table 43 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Layer 2 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 2 classifier.	
VLAN	Select **Any** to classify traffic from any VLAN or select the second option and specify the source VLAN ID in the field provided.
Priority	Select **Any** to classify traffic from any priority level or select the second option and specify a priority level in the field provided.
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select **Other** and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to Table 45 on page 153 for information.
Source	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Port	Type the port number to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports (**Any**).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 3 classifier.	
DSCP	Select **Any** to classify traffic from any DSCP or select the second option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select **Other** and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to Table 46 on page 153 for more information. You may select **Establish Only** for **TCP** protocol type. This means that the Switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. A subnet mask can be represented by a 32 bit binary notation. For example, the subnet mask “255.255.255.0” can be represented as “11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000”, and counting up the number of ones in this case results in 24.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Destination	

Table 43 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

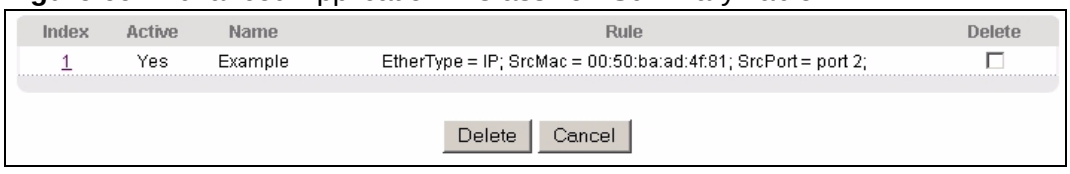
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. A subnet mask can be represented by a 32 bit binary notation. For example, the subnet mask “255.255.255.0” can be represented as “11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000”, and counting up the number of ones in this case results in 24.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

18.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Note: When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over a lower layer rule.

Figure 69 Advanced Application > Classifier: Summary Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

Table 45 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

In the Internet Protocol, there is a field called "Protocol" to identify the IP protocol type. The following table shows some common protocol types and the corresponding protocol number. Refer to http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers for a complete list.

Table 46 Common IP Protocol Types and Protocol Numbers

PROTOCOL TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
ICMP	1
TCP	6
UDP	17
EGP	8
L2TP	115

Some of the most common IP ports are:

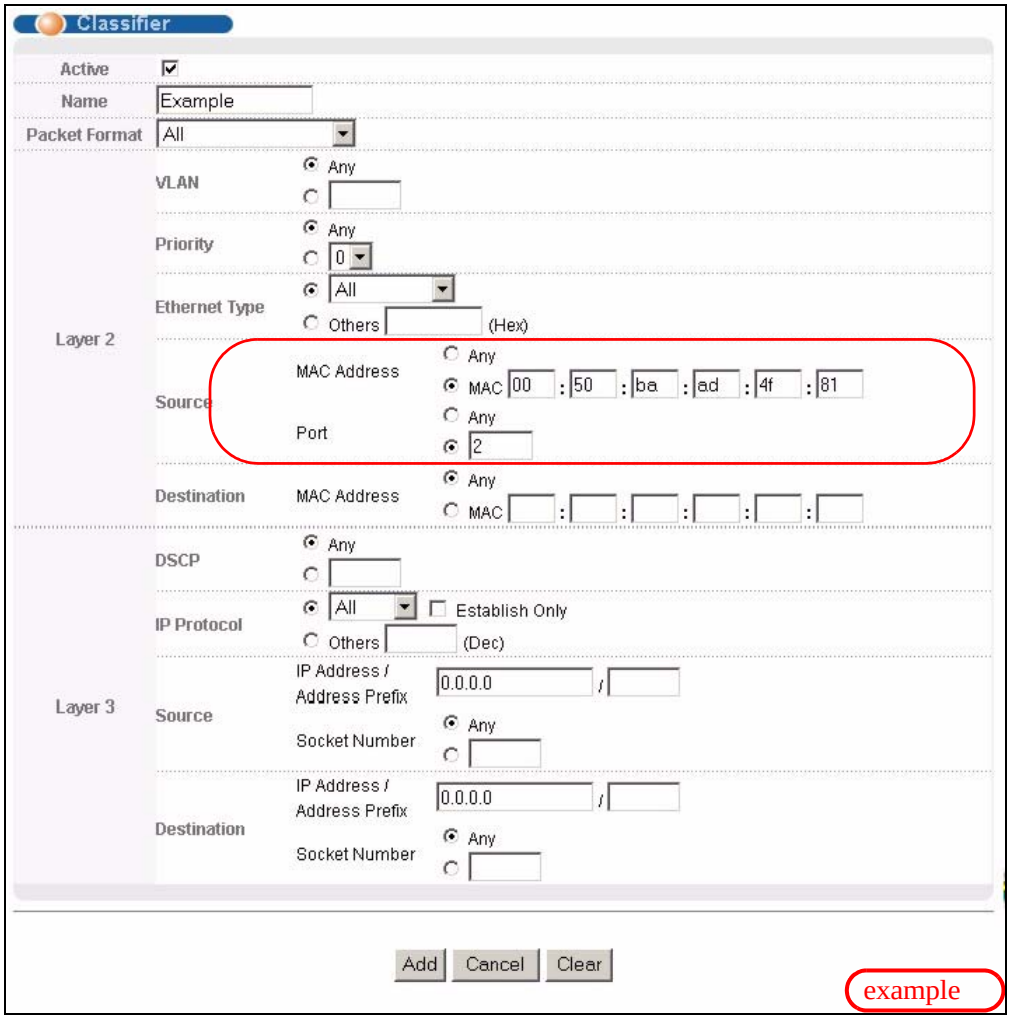
Table 47 Common TCP and UDP Port Numbers

PORT NUMBER	PORT NAME
21	FTP
23	Telnet
25	SMTP
53	DNS
80	HTTP
110	POP3

18.4 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example of configuring a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

Figure 70 Classifier: Example



After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow. See Chapter 19 on page 157 for information on configuring a policy rule.

19

Policy Rule

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

19.1 Policy Rules Overview

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to Chapter 18 on page 149 for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

19.1.1 DiffServ

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

19.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

DSCP (6 bits)	Unused (2 bits)

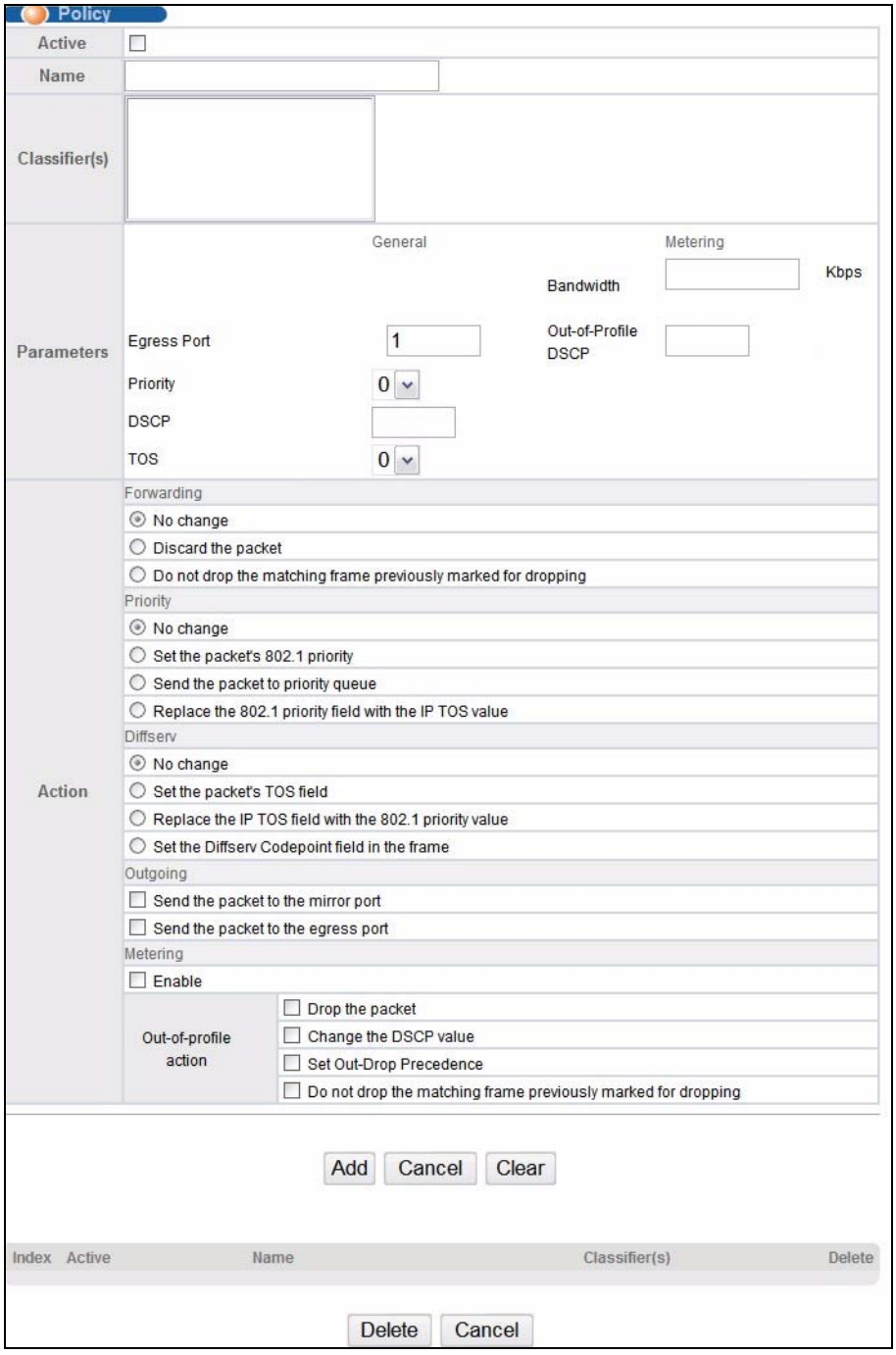
The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

19.2 Configuring Policy Rules

You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to Section 18.2 on page 149 for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications > Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 71 Advanced Application > Policy Rule



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Policy Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the **Classifier** screen. Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the **Action** field.	
General	
Egress Port	Type the number of an outgoing port.
Priority	Specify a priority level.
DSCP	Specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63.
TOS	Specify the type of service (TOS) priority level.
Metering	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow. Traffic that exceeds the maximum bandwidth allocated (in cases where the network is congested) is called out-of-profile traffic.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobit per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 1 and 1000000.
Out-of-Profile DSCP	Specify a new DSCP number (between 0 and 63) if you want to replace or remark the DSCP number for out-of-profile traffic.
Action Specify the action(s) the Switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow.	
Forwarding	Select **No change** to forward the packets. Select **Discard the packet** to drop the packets. Select **Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping** to retain the frames that were marked to be dropped before.
Priority	Select **No change** to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select **Set the packet's 802.1 priority** to replace the packet's 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the Priority field. Select **Send the packet to priority queue** to put the packets in the designated queue. Select **Replace the 802.1 priority field with the IP TOS value** to replace the packet's 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the **TOS** field.

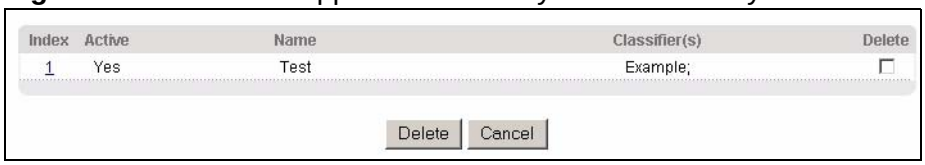
Table 48 Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Diffserv	Select **No change** to keep the TOS and/or DSCP fields in the packets. Select **Set the packet's TOS field** to set the TOS field with the value you configure in the **TOS** field. Select **Replace the IP TOS with the 802.1 priority value** to replace the TOS field with the value you configure in the **Priority** field. Select **Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame** to set the DSCP field with the value you configure in the **DSCP** field.
Outgoing	Select **Send the packet to the mirror port** to send the packet to the mirror port. Select **Send the packet to the egress port** to send the packet to the egress port.
Metering	Select **Enable** to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s) then set the actions to be taken on out-of-profile packets.
Out-of-profile action	Select the action(s) to be performed for out-of-profile traffic. Select **Drop the packet** to discard the out-of-profile traffic. Select **Change the DSCP value** to replace the DSCP field with the value specified in the **Out of profile DSCP** field. Select **Set Out-Drop Precedence** to mark out-of-profile traffic and drop it when network is congested. Select **Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping** to queue the frames that are marked to be dropped.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

19.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Figure 72 Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

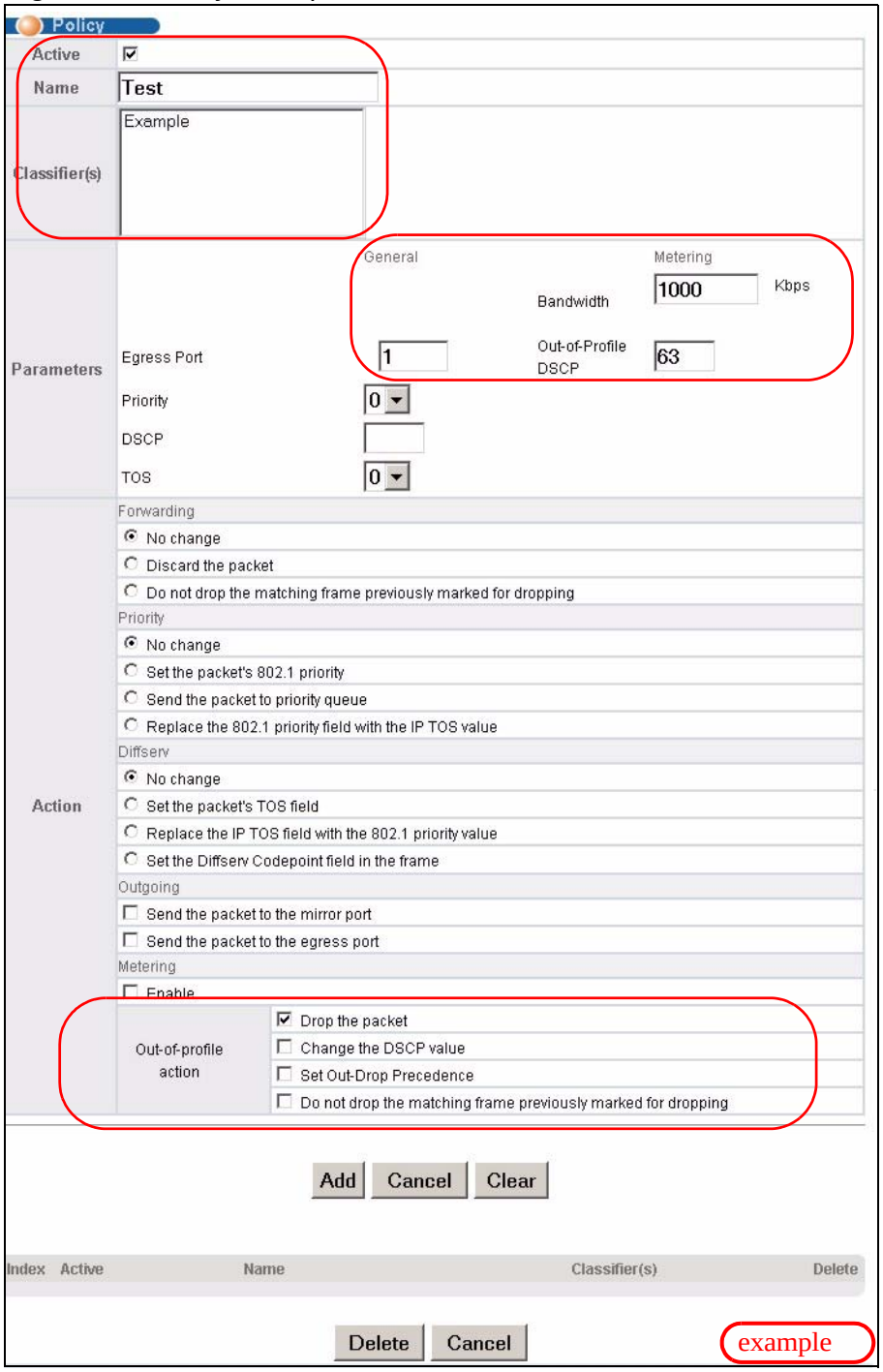
Table 49 Policy: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when policy is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the name you have assigned to this policy.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

19.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth and discard out-of-profile traffic on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to Section 18.4 on page 155).

Figure 73 Policy Example



20

Queuing Method

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

20.1 Queuing Method Overview

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment** in **Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority** in **Port Setup** for related information.

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

20.1.1 Strictly Priority

Strictly Priority (SP) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the Switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SP does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

20.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (portion) (the number you configure in the Weight field - see Figure 18 1) when there is traffic congestion. WFQ is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the

different traffic queues. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on. Guaranteed bandwidth is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Queue Weight}}{\text{Total Queue Weight}} \times \text{Port Speed}$$

For example, using the default setting, Q0 on Port 1 gets a guaranteed bandwidth of:

$$\frac{1}{1+2+3+4+5+6+7+8} \times 100 \text{ Mbps} = 3 \text{ Mbps}$$

20.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

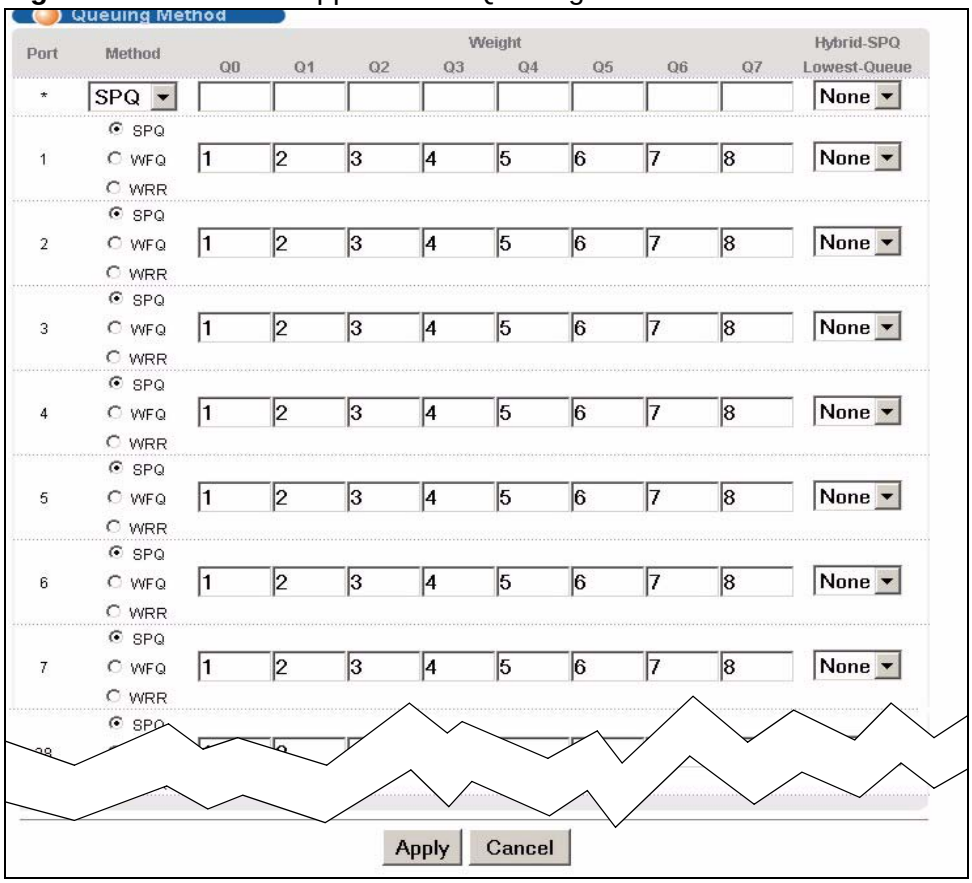
Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

20.2 Configuring Queuing

Click **Advanced Application** > **Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

Figure 74 Advanced Application > Queuing Method



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Queuing Method (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Method	Select **SPQ (Strictly Priority Queuing), WFQ (Weighted Fair Queuing) or WRR (Weighted Round Robin)**. Strictly Priority services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest. Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth weight (the number you configure in the **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. Weighted Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.
Weight	When you select **WFQ** or **WRR** enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Hybrid-SPQ Lowest Queue	This field is applicable only when you select **WFQ** or **WRR**. Select a queue (**Q0** to **Q7**) to have the Switch use **Strictly Priority** to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue. For example, if you select **Q5**, the Switch services traffic on **Q5**, **Q6** and **Q7** using **Strictly Priority**. Select **None** to always use **WFQ** or **WRR**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

21

VLAN Stacking

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN stacking on your Switch. See the chapter on VLANs for more background information on Virtual LAN

21.1 VLAN Stacking Overview

A service provider can use VLAN stacking to allow it to distinguish multiple customers VLANs, even those with the same (customer-assigned) VLAN ID, within its network.

Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames (“double-tagged” frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

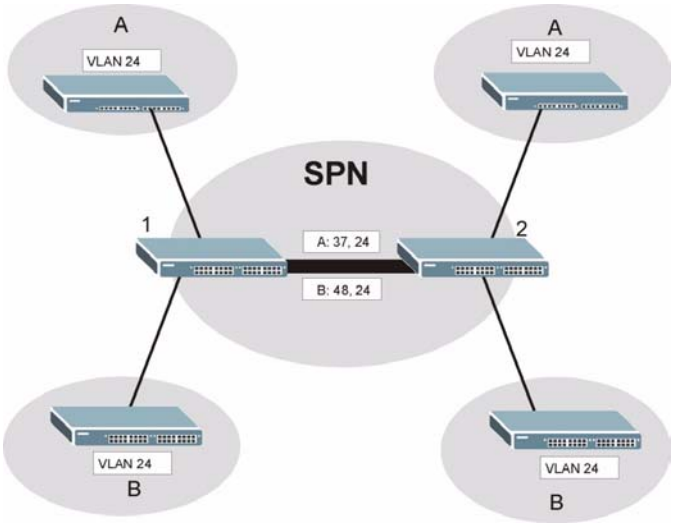
A service provider’s customers may require a range of VLANs to handle multiple applications. A service provider’s customers can assign their own inner VLAN tags on ports for these applications. The service provider can assign an outer VLAN tag for each customer. Therefore, there is no VLAN tag overlap among customers, so traffic from different customers is kept separate.

21.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example

In the following example figure, both **A** and **B** are Service Provider’s Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by adding tag 37 to

distinguish customer **A** and tag 48 to distinguish customer **B** at edge device **1** and then stripping those tags at edge device **2** as the data frames leave the network.

Figure 75 VLAN Stacking Example



21.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have one of the following VLAN stacking “roles”: **Access Port** or **Tunnel** .

- Select **Access Port** for ingress ports on the service provider's edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure). The incoming frame is treated as "untagged", so a second VLAN tag (outer VLAN tag) can be added.

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be disabled on a port where you choose **Access Port**.

- Select **Tunnel Port** for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider's VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by the Service Provider’s (SP) VLAN ID (VID)).

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be enabled on a port where you choose **Tunnel Port**.

21.3 VLAN Tag Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

Table 51 VLAN Tag Format

Type	Priority	VID

Type is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. **SP TPID** (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type. Many vendors use 0x8100 or 0x9100.

TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is the customer IEEE 802.1Q tag.

- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Access Port**, then the Switch adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure).
- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Tunnel Port**, then the Switch only adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure) that have an **SP TPID** different to the one configured on the Switch. (If an incoming frame's **SP TPID** is the same as the one configured on the Switch, then the Switch will not add the tag.)

Priority refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for.

- On the Switch, configure priority level of the inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen.
- "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

VID is the VLAN ID. **SP VID** is the VID for the second (service provider's) VLAN tag.

21.3.1 Frame Format

The frame format for an untagged Ethernet frame, a single-tagged 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) is shown next.

Configure the fields as highlighted in the Switch **VLAN Stacking** screen.

Table 52 Single and Double Tagged 802.11Q Frame Format

						DA	SA	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS	Untagged Ethernet frame
			DA	SA	**TPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS	IEEE 802.1Q customer tagged frame
DA	SA	**SPTPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	**TPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS	Double-tagged frame

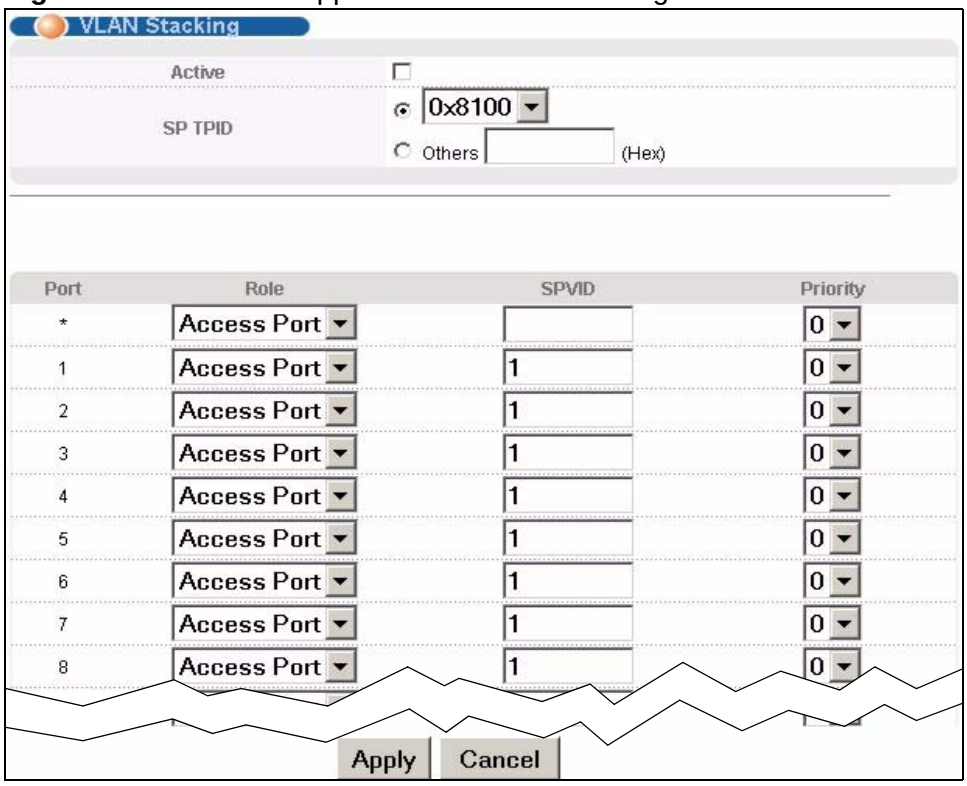
Table 53 802.1Q Frame

DA	Destination Address	Priority	802.1p Priority
SA	Source Address	Len/ Etype	Length and type of Ethernet frame
(SP)TPID	(Service Provider) Tag Protocol IDentifier	Data	Frame data
VID	VLAN ID	FCS	Frame Check Sequence

21.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking

Click **Advanced Applications > VLAN Stacking** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 76 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 54 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this checkbox to enable VLAN stacking on the Switch.
SP TPID	**SP TPID** is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. Choose **0x8100** or **0x9100** from the drop-down list box or select **Others** and then enter a four-digit hexadecimal number from 0x0000 to 0xFFFF. 0x denotes a hexadecimal number. It does not have to be typed in the **Others** text field.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 54 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Role	Select **Access Port** to have the Switch add the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames received on this port. Select **Access Port** for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Select **Tunnel Port** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. In order to support VLAN stacking on a port, the port must be able to allow frames of 1526 Bytes (1522 Bytes + 4 Bytes for the second tag) to pass through it.
SPVID	**SPVID** is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See Chapter 8 on page 79 for more background information on VLAN ID.
Priority	On the Switch, configure priority level of inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

22 Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

22.1 Multicast Overview

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112, RFC 2236 and RFC 3376 for information on IGMP versions 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

22.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA website for more information).

22.1.2 IGMP Filtering

With the IGMP filtering feature, you can control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. This allows you to control the distribution of multicast services (such as content information distribution) based on service plans and types of subscription.

You can set the Switch to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating the profile to a port.

22.1.3 IGMP Snooping

The Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

22.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs

The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first 16 VLANs that send IGMP packets. This is referred to as auto mode. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

22.2 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the multicast group information. See Section 22.1 on page 175 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 77 Advanced Application > Multicast

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 Multicast Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.

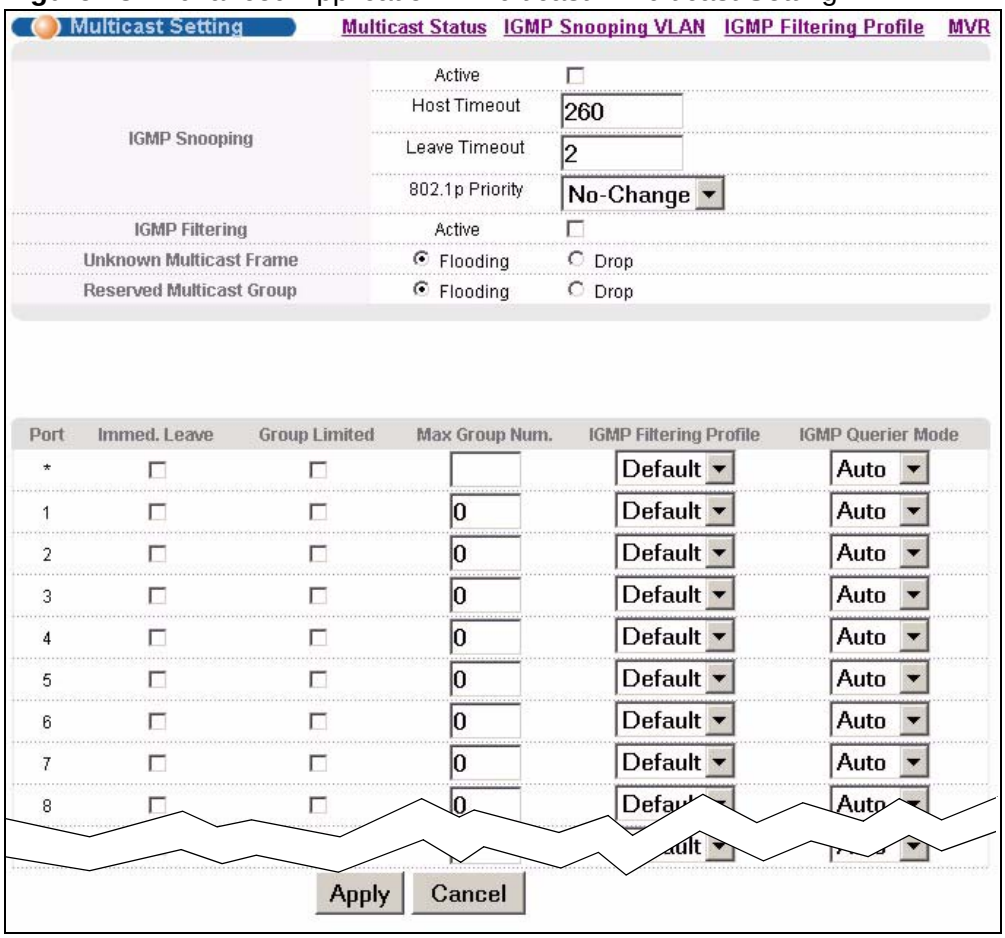
Table 55 Multicast Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

22.3 Multicast Setting

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > Multicast Setting** link to display the screen as shown. See Section 22.1 on page 175 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 78 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Use these settings to configure IGMP Snooping.
Active	Select **Active** to enable IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16 711 450) in seconds that elapses before the Switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.
Leave Timeout	Enter an IGMP leave timeout value (from 1 to 16 711 450) in seconds. This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received from a host.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select **No-Change** to not replace the priority.
IGMP Filtering	Select **Active** to enable IGMP filtering to control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. Note: If you enable IGMP filtering, you must create and assign IGMP filtering profiles for the ports that you want to allow to join multicast groups.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Reserved Multicast Group	Multicast addresses (224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255) are reserved for the local scope. For examples, 224.0.0.1 is for all hosts in this subnet, 224.0.0.2 is for all multicast routers in this subnet, etc. A router will not forward a packet with the destination IP address within this range. See the IANA website for more information. Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives a frame with a reserved multicast address. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Immed. Leave	Select this option to set the Switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.

Table 56 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting (continued)

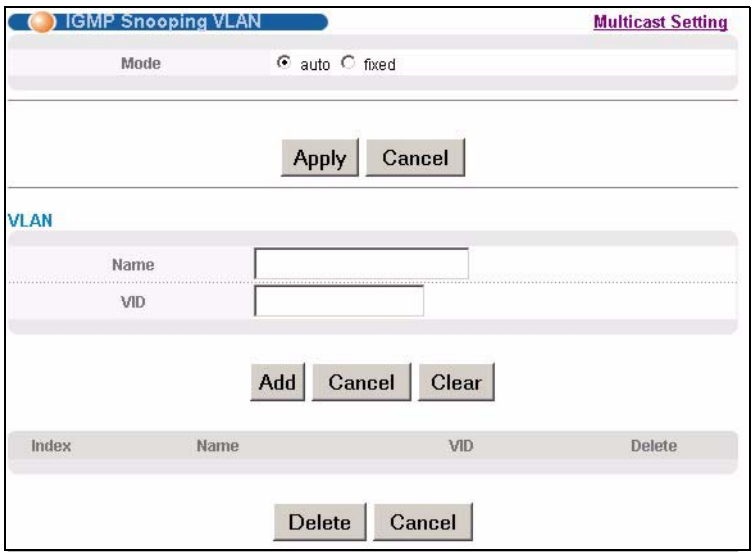
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.
IGMP Filtering Profile	Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select **Default** to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group. You can create IGMP filtering profiles in the **Multicast** > **Multicast Setting** > **IGMP Filtering Profile** screen.
IGMP Querier Mode	The Switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port. Select **Auto** to have the Switch use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets. Select **Fixed** to have the Switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port. Select **Edge** to stop the Switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The Switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

22.4 IGMP Snooping VLAN

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** link to display the

screen as shown. See Section 22.1.4 on page 176 for more information on IGMP Snooping VLAN.

Figure 79 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select **auto** to have the Switch learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically. Select **fixed** to have the Switch only learn multicast group membership information of the VLAN(s) that you specify below. In either **auto** or **fixed** mode, the Switch can learn up to 16 VLANs (including up to three VLANs you configured in the **MVR** screen). For example, if you have configured one multicast VLAN in the **MVR** screen, you can only specify up to 15 VLANs in this screen. The Switch drops any IGMP control messages which do not belong to these 16 VLANs. Note: You must also enable IGMP snooping in the **Multicast Setting** screen first.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	Use this section of the screen to add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of the VLAN for identification purposes.

Table 57 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN (continued)

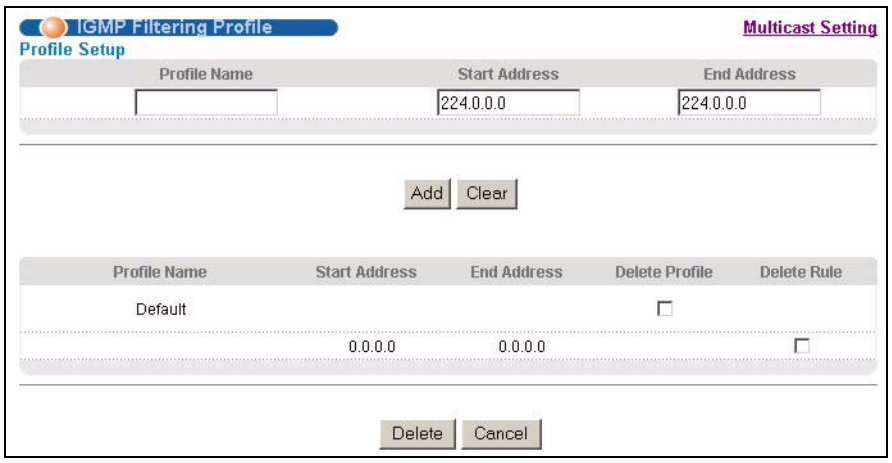
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID of a static VLAN; the valid range is between 1 and 4094. Note: You cannot configure the same VLAN ID as in the **MVR** screen.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields.
Index	This is the number of the IGMP snooping VLAN entry in the table.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

22.5 IGMP Filtering Profile

An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Switch are able to join. A profile contains a range of multicast IP addresses which you want clients to be able to join. Profiles are assigned to ports (in the **Multicast Setting** screen). Clients connected to those ports are then able to join the multicast groups specified in the profile. Each port can be assigned a single profile. A profile can be assigned to multiple ports.

Click **Advanced Applications** > **Multicast** > **Multicast Setting** > **IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 80 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes. To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile. If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the **Start Address** and **End Address** fields.
Add	Click **Add** to save the profile to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click **Clear** to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.

Table 58 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Profile** column, then click the **Delete** button. To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete Rule** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete Profile**/**Delete Rule** check boxes.

22.6 MVR Overview

Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across an Ethernet ring-based service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1**, **2** and **3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the Switch and **S**.

Figure 81 MVR Network Example

22.6.1 Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the Switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast traffic. Once configured, the Switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

22.6.2 MVR Modes

You can set your Switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the Switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the Switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

22.6.3 How MVR Works

The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the Switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the Switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the Switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the Switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the Switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the Switch to leave the multicast group. The Switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, an uplink port on the Switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the Switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.

Figure 82 MVR Multicast Television Example

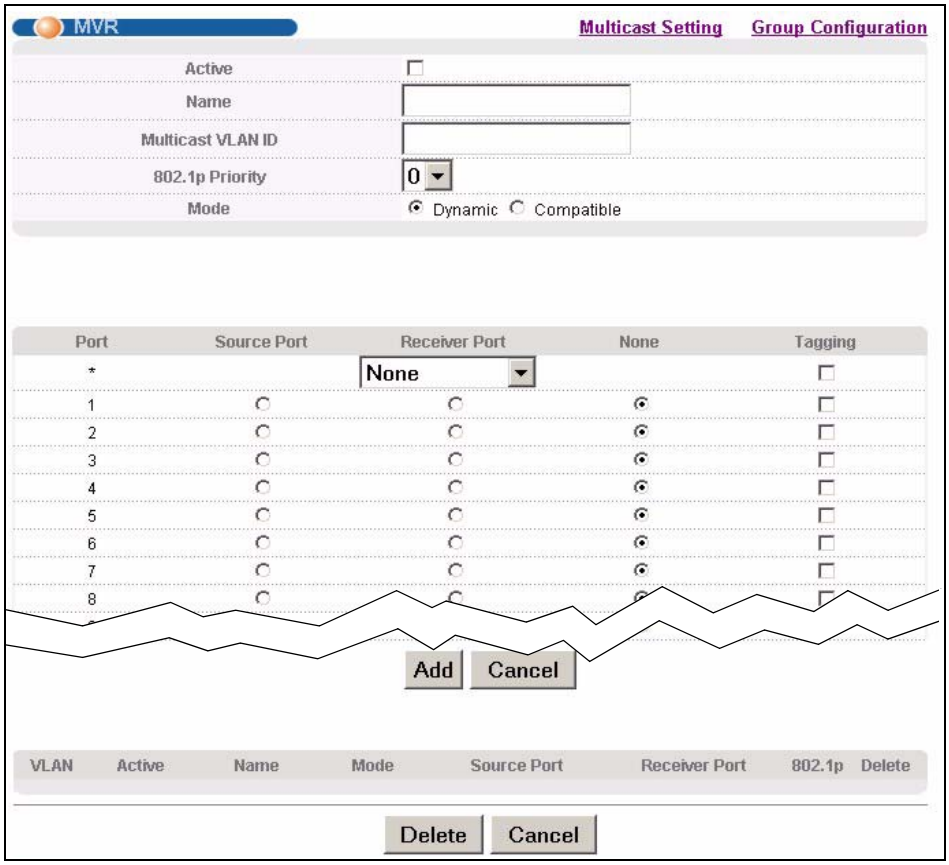
22.7 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN. Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** > **Multicast Setting > MVR** link to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You can create up to three multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the Switch.

Note: Your Switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

Figure 83 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.

Table 59 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the Switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the Switch. Choices are **Dynamic** and **Compatible**. Select **Dynamic** to send IGMP reports to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select **Compatible** to set the Switch not to send IGMP reports.
Port	This field displays the port number on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Source Port	Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic. All source ports must belong to a single multicast VLAN.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic.
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this checkbox if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
802.1p	This field displays the priority level.
Delete	To delete a multicast VLAN(s), select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

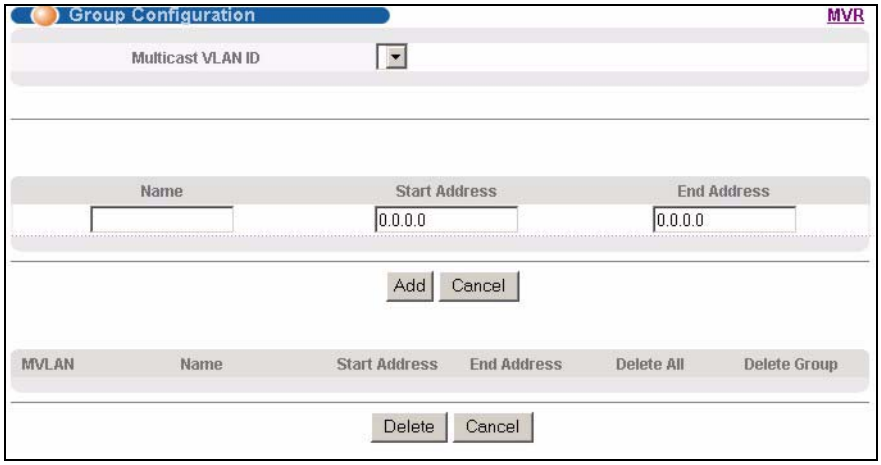
22.8 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Configure MVR IP multicast group address(es) in the **Group Configuration** screen. Click **Group Configuration** in the **MVR** screen.

Note: A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

Figure 84 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR: Group Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR: Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the **MVR** screen) from the drop-down list box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to Section 22.1.1 on page 175 for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the **Start Address** field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to Section 22.1.1 on page 175 for more information on IP multicast addresses.

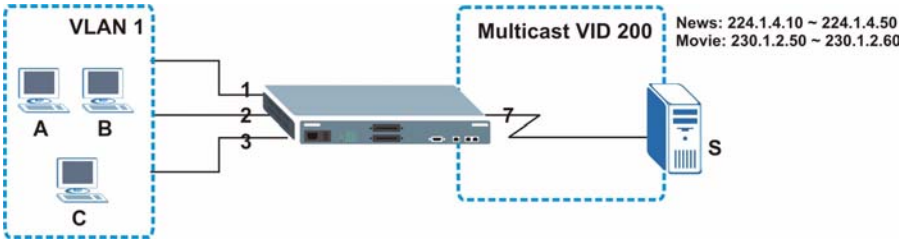
Table 60 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR: Group Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select **Delete All** or **Delete Group** and click **Delete** to remove the selected entries from the table.
Cancel	Select **Cancel** to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

22.8.1 MVR Configuration Example

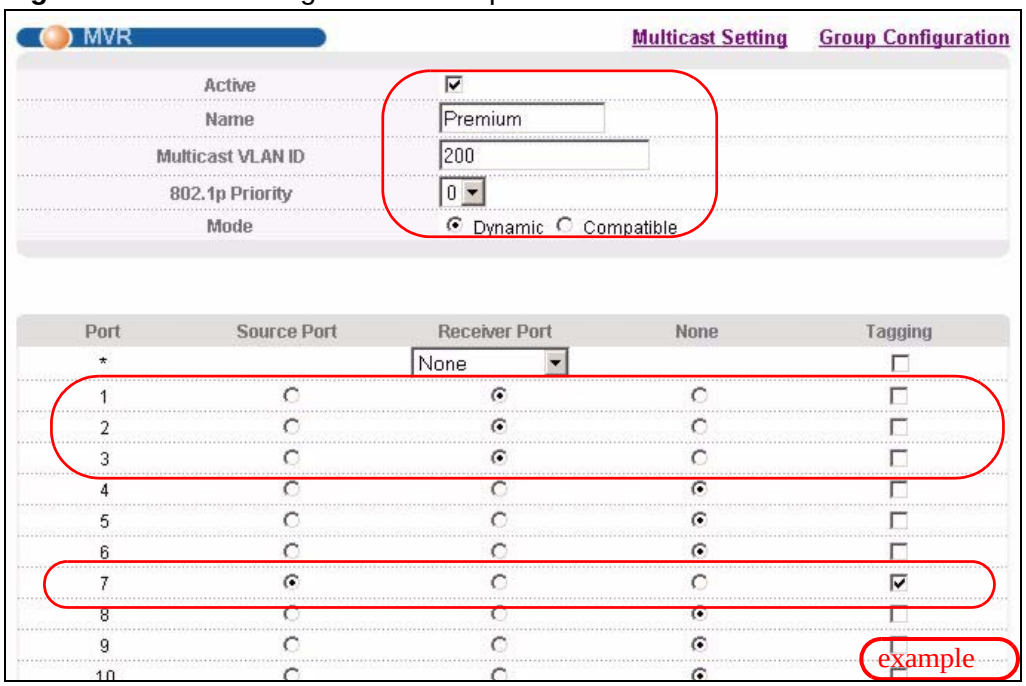
The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the Switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the **News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers A, B and C in VLAN 1 are able to receive the traffic.

Figure 85 MVR Configuration Example



To configure the MVR settings on the Switch, create a multicast group in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

Figure 86 MVR Configuration Example



To set the Switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The

following figure shows an example where two multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

Figure 87 MVR Group Configuration Example

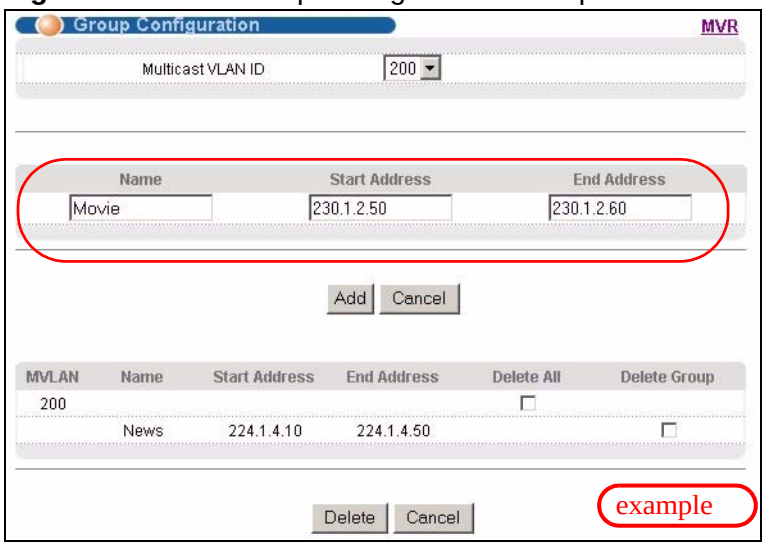
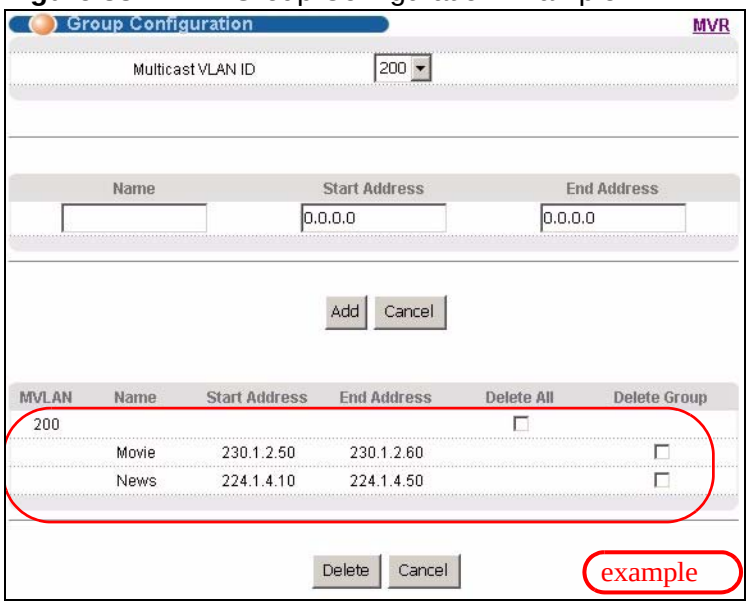


Figure 88 MVR Group Configuration Example



23

Authentication & Accounting

This chapter describes how to configure authentication and accounting settings on the Switch.

23.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting

Authentication is the process of determining who a user is and validating access to the Switch. The Switch can authenticate users who try to log in based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself. The Switch can also use an external authentication server to authenticate a large number of users.

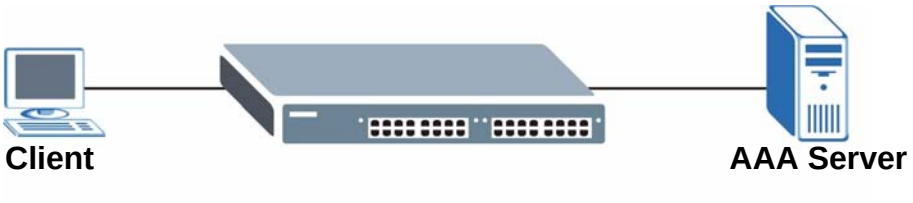
Authorization is the process of determining what a user is allowed to do. Different user accounts may have higher or lower privilege levels associated with them. For example, user A may have the right to create new login accounts on the Switch but user B cannot. The Switch can authorize users based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself or it can use an external server to authorize a large number of users.

Accounting is the process of recording what a user is doing. The Switch can use an external server to track when users log in, log out, execute commands and so on. Accounting can also record system related actions such as boot up and shut down times of the Switch.

The external servers that perform authentication, authorization and accounting functions are known as AAA servers. The Switch supports RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, see Section 23.1.2 on page 192) and TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus, see Section

23.1.2 on page 192) as external authentication, authorization and accounting servers.

Figure 89 AAA Server



23.1.1 Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate and authorize users without interacting with a network AAA server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way (See Chapter 32 on page 279).

23.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+

RADIUS and TACACS+ are security protocols used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication both allow you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

The following table describes some key differences between RADIUS and TACACS+.

Table 61 RADIUS vs TACACS+

	RADIUS	TACACS+
Transport Protocol	UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
Encryption	Encrypts the password sent for authentication.	All communication between the client (the Switch) and the TACACS server is encrypted.

23.2 Authentication and Accounting Screens

To enable authentication, accounting or both on the Switch. First, configure your authentication server settings (RADIUS, TACACS+ or both) and then set up the authentication priority and accounting settings.

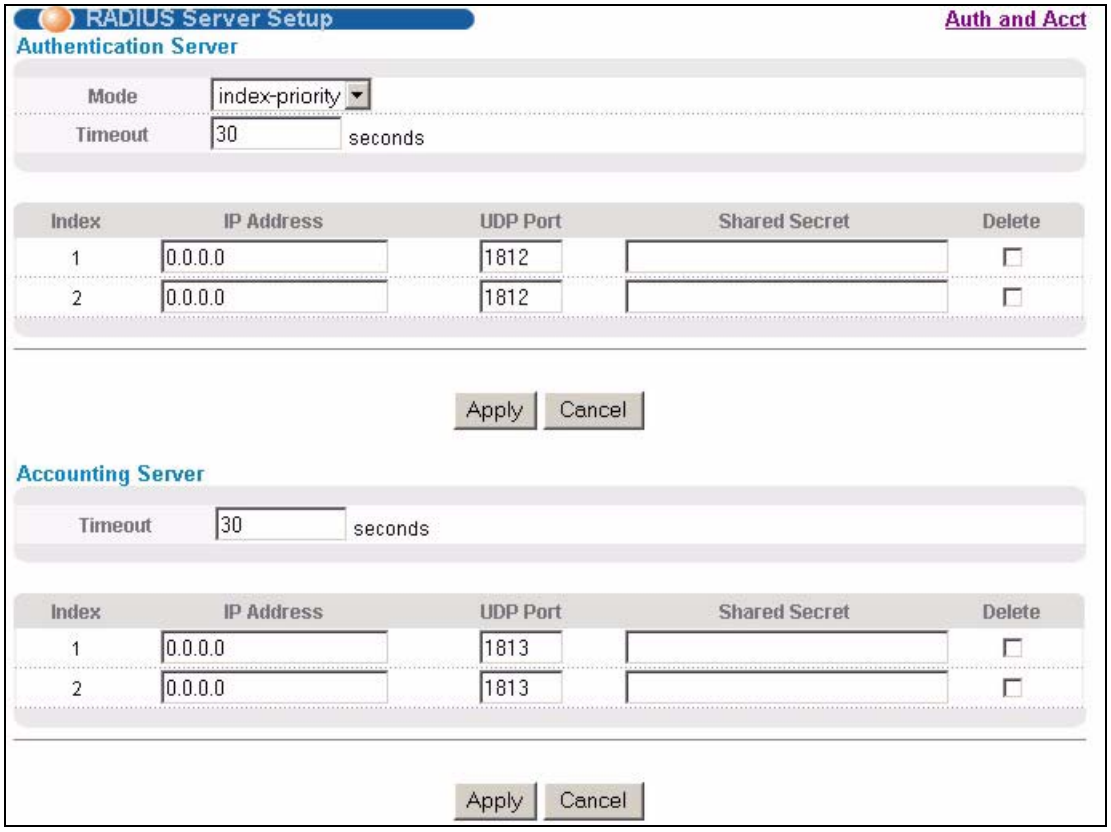
Click **Advanced Application** > **Auth and Acct** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 90 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct

23.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your RADIUS server settings. See Section 23.1.2 on page 192 for more information on RADIUS servers. Click on the **RADIUS Server Setup** link in the **Authentication and Accounting** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 91 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > RADIUS Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS authentication settings.
Mode	This field only applies if you configure multiple RADIUS servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured RADIUS server, if the RADIUS server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second RADIUS server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the RADIUS servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the RADIUS server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two RADIUS servers then the timeout value is divided between the two RADIUS servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first RADIUS server for 15 seconds and then tries the second RADIUS server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is **1812**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS accounting server settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the RADIUS accounting server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS accounting server for accounting is **1813**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.

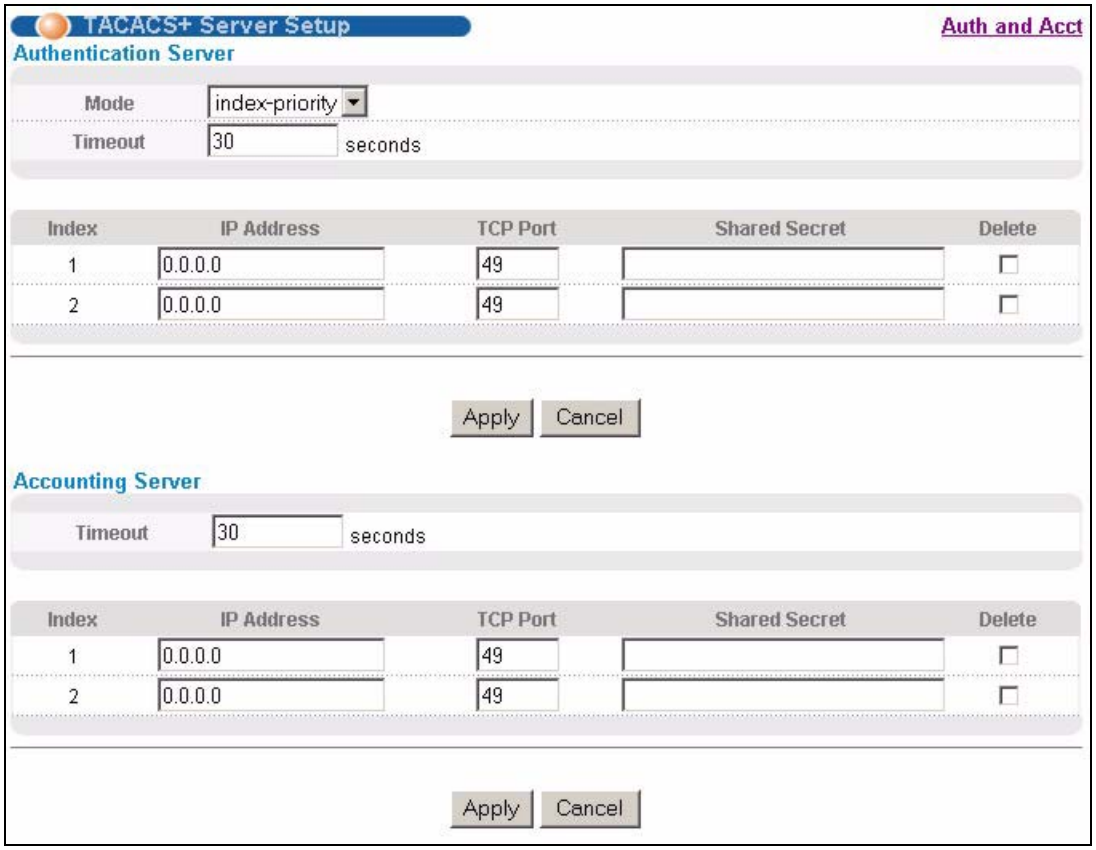
Table 62 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your TACACS+ server settings. See Section 23.1.2 on page 192 for more information on TACACS+ servers. Click on the **TACACS+ Server Setup** link in the **Authentication and Accounting** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 92 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > TACACS+ Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple TACACS+ servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured TACACS+ server, if the TACACS+ server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second TACACS+ server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the TACACS+ servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the TACACS+ server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two TACACS+ servers then the timeout value is divided between the two TACACS+ servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first TACACS+ server for 15 seconds and then tries the second TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ server for authentication is **49**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ accounting settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ accounting server is **49**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.

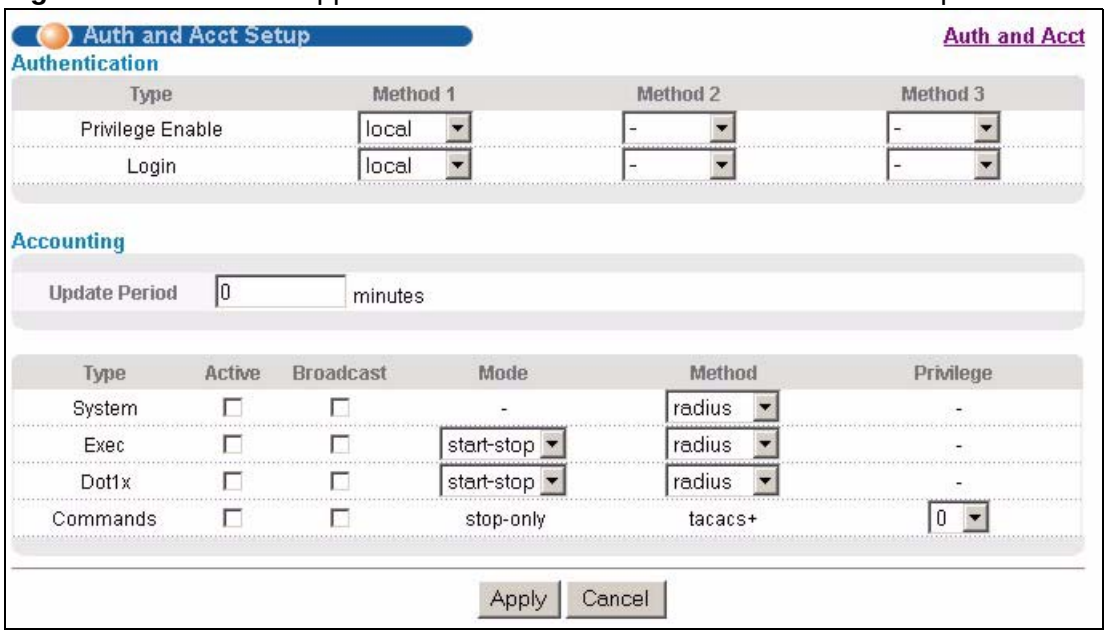
Table 63 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.2.3 Authentication and Accounting Setup

Use this screen to configure authentication and accounting settings on the Switch. Click on the **Auth and Acct Setup** link in the **Authentication and Accounting** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 93 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > Auth and Acct Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > Auth and Acct Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Use this section to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch.
Privilege Enable	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate access privilege level for administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the access privilege of accounts via commands for **local** authentication. The **TACACS+** and **RADIUS** are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate the access privilege level of administrators. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for access privilege level specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the access privilege configured for local authentication. Select **radius** or **tacacs+** to have the Switch check the access privilege via the external servers.
Login	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the local user accounts in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate administrator accounts. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for administrator accounts, specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. Select **radius** to have the Switch authenticate the administrator accounts through a RADIUS server. Select **tacacs+** to have the Switch authenticate the administrator accounts through a TACACS+ server.
Accounting	Use this section to configure accounting settings on the Switch.
Update Period	This is the amount of time in minutes before the Switch sends an update to the accounting server. This is only valid if you select the **start-stop** option for the **Exec** or **Dot1x** entries.

Table 64 Advanced Application > Auth and Acct > Auth and Acct Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	The Switch supports the following types of events to be sent to the accounting server(s): • **System** - Configure the Switch to send information when the following system events occur: system boots up, system shuts down, system accounting is enabled, system accounting is disabled • **Exec** - Configure the Switch to send information when an administrator logs in and logs out via the console port, telnet or SSH. • **Dot1x** - Configure the Switch to send information when an IEEE 802.1x client begins a session (authenticates via the Switch), ends a session as well as interim updates of a session. • **Commands** - Configure the Switch to send information when commands of specified privilege level and higher are executed on the Switch.
Active	Select this to activate accounting for a specified event types.
Broadcast	Select this to have the Switch send accounting information to all configured accounting servers at the same time. If you don't select this and you have two accounting servers set up, then the Switch sends information to the first accounting server and if it doesn't get a response from the accounting server then it tries the second accounting server.
Mode	The Switch supports two modes of recording login events. Select: • **start-stop** - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server when a user begins a session, during a user's session (if it lasts past the **Update Period**), and when a user ends a session. • **stop-only** - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server only when a user ends a session.
Method	Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for accounting of specific types of events. TACACS+ is the only method for recording **Commands** type of event.
Privilege	This field is only configurable for **Commands** type of event. Select the threshold command privilege level for which the Switch should send accounting information. The Switch will send accounting information when commands at the level you specify and higher are executed on the Switch.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute

RFC 2865 standard specifies a method for sending vendor-specific information between a RADIUS server and a network access device (for example, the Switch). A company can create Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) to expand the functionality of a RADIUS server.

The Switch supports VSAs that allow you to perform the following actions based on user authentication:

- Limit bandwidth on incoming or outgoing traffic for the port the user connects to.
- Assign account privilege levels for the authenticated user.

The VSAs are composed of the following:

- **Vendor-ID**: An identification number assigned to the company by the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). ZyXEL's vendor ID is 890.
- **Vendor-Type**: A vendor specified attribute, identifying the setting you want to modify.
- **Vendor-data**: A value you want to assign to the setting.

Note: Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server on how to configure VSAs for users authenticating via the RADIUS server.

The following table describes the VSAs supported on the Switch.

Table 65 Supported VSAs

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
Ingress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **1** Vendor-data = ingress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Egress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **2** Vendor-data = egress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Privilege Assignment	Vendor-ID = **890** Vendor-Type = **3** Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" or Vendor-ID = **9** (CISCO) Vendor-Type = **1** (CISCO-AVPAIR) Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" where N is a privilege level (from 0 to 14). Note: If you set the privilege level of a login account differently on the RADIUS server(s) and the Switch, the user is assigned a privilege level from the database (RADIUS or local) the Switch uses first for user authentication.

23.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute

You can configure tunnel protocol attributes on the RADIUS server (refer to your RADIUS server documentation) to assign a port on the Switch to a VLAN based on

IEEE 802.1x authentication. The port VLAN settings are fixed and untagged. This will also set the port's VID. The following table describes the values you need to configure. Note that the bolded values in the table are fixed values as defined in RFC 3580.

Table 66 Supported Tunnel Protocol Attribute

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
VLAN Assignment	Tunnel-Type = **VLAN(13)** Tunnel-Medium-Type = **802(6)** Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN ID Note: You must also create a VLAN with the specified VID on the Switch.

23.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) attributes are data used to define specific authentication, and accounting elements in a user profile, which is stored on the RADIUS server. This section lists the RADIUS attributes supported by the Switch.

Refer to RFC 2865 for more information about RADIUS attributes used for authentication. Refer to RFC 2866 and RFC 2869 for RADIUS attributes used for accounting.

This section lists the attributes used by authentication and accounting functions on the Switch. In cases where the attribute has a specific format associated with it, the format is specified.

23.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

23.3.1.1 Attributes Used for Authenticating Privilege Access

User-Name
- the format of the User-Name attribute is **$enab#$**, where # is the privilege level (1~14)

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

23.3.1.2 Attributes Used to Login Users

User-Name

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

23.3.1.3 Attributes Used by the IEEE 802.1x Authentication

User-Name

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Port

NAS-Port-Type

- This value is set to **Ethernet(15)** on the Switch.

Calling-Station-Id

Frame-MTU

EAP-Message

State

Message-Authenticator

23.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

23.3.2.1 Attributes Used for Accounting System Events

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Identifier

Acct-Status-Type

Acct-Session-ID

- The format of Acct-Session-Id is **date+time+8-digit sequential number**, for example, 200704191721030000000l. (date: 2007/04/19, time: 17:21:03, serial number: 00000001)

Acct-Delay-Time

23.3.2.2 Attributes Used for Accounting Exec Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time that they are sent (the difference between Console and Telnet/SSH Exec events is that the Telnet/SSH events utilize the Calling-Station-Id attribute):

Table 67 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✔	✔	✔
NAS-Identifier	✔	✔	✔
NAS-IP-Address	✔	✔	✔
Service-Type	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Status-Type	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Delay-Time	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Session-Id	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Authentic	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Session-Time		✔	✔
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✔

Table 68 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Telnet/SSH

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✔	✔	✔
NAS-Identifier	✔	✔	✔
NAS-IP-Address	✔	✔	✔
Service-Type	✔	✔	✔
Calling-Station-Id	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Status-Type	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Delay-Time	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Session-Id	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Authentic	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Session-Time		✔	✔
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✔

23.3.2.3 Attributes Used for Accounting IEEE 802.1x Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time of the session they are sent:

Table 69 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✔	✔	✔
NAS-IP-Address	✔	✔	✔

Table 69 RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
NAS-Port	✔	✔	✔
Class	✔	✔	✔
Called-Station-Id	✔	✔	✔
Calling-Station-Id	✔	✔	✔
NAS-Identifier	✔	✔	✔
NAS-Port-Type	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Status-Type	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Delay-Time	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Session-Id	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Authentic	✔	✔	✔
Acct-Input-Octets		✔	✔
Acct-Output-Octets		✔	✔
Acct-Session-Time		✔	✔
Acct-Input-Packets		✔	✔
Acct-Output-Packets		✔	✔
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✔
Acct-Input-Gigawords		✔	✔
Acct-Output-Gigawords		✔	✔

24

IP Source Guard

Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.

24.1 IP Source Guard Overview

IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. A binding contains these key attributes:

- MAC address
- VLAN ID
- IP address
- Port number

When the Switch receives a DHCP or ARP packet, it looks up the appropriate MAC address, VLAN ID, IP address, and port number in the binding table. If there is a binding, the Switch forwards the packet. If there is not a binding, the Switch discards the packet.

The Switch builds the binding table by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings).

IP source guard consists of the following features:

- Static bindings. Use this to create static bindings in the binding table.
- DHCP snooping. Use this to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically.
- ARP inspection. Use this to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network.

If you want to use dynamic bindings to filter unauthorized ARP packets (typical implementation), you have to enable DHCP snooping before you enable ARP inspection.

24.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

24.1.1.1 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

24.1.1.2 DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again. As a result, it is recommended you configure the DHCP snooping database.

The DHCP snooping database maintains the dynamic bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection in a file on an external TFTP server. If you set up the DHCP snooping database, the Switch can reload the dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database after the Switch restarts.

You can configure the name and location of the file on the external TFTP server. The file has the following format:

Figure 94 DHCP Snooping Database File Format

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<binding-1> <checksum-1>
<binding-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
...
<binding-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

The <initial-checksum> helps distinguish between the bindings in the latest update and the bindings from previous updates. Each binding consists of 72 bytes, a space, and another checksum that is used to validate the binding when it is read. If the calculated checksum is not equal to the checksum in the file, that binding and all others after it are ignored.

24.1.1.3 DHCP Relay Option 82 Information

The Switch can add information to DHCP requests that it does not discard. This provides the DHCP server more information about the source of the requests. The Switch can add the following information:

- Slot ID (1 byte), port ID (1 byte), and source VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes)

This information is stored in an Agent Information field in the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames. See Chapter 29 on page 249 for more information about DHCP relay option 82.

When the DHCP server responds, the Switch removes the information in the Agent Information field before forwarding the response to the original source.

You can configure this setting for each source VLAN. This setting is independent of the DHCP relay settings (Chapter 29 on page 249).

24.1.1.4 Configuring DHCP Snooping

Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

1. Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.
2. Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN, and configure DHCP relay option 82.

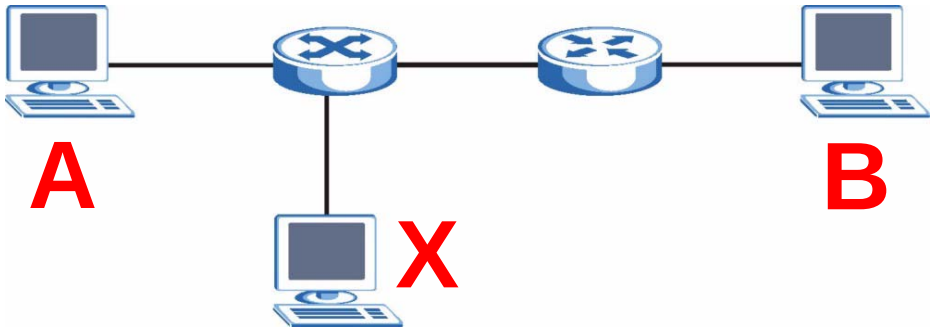
3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of DHCP packets that each port can receive per second.

4 Configure static bindings.

24.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview

Use ARP inspection to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network. This can prevent many kinds of man-in-the-middle attacks, such as the one in the following example.

Figure 95 Example: Man-in-the-middle Attack



In this example, computer **B** tries to establish a connection with computer **A**. Computer **X** is in the same broadcast domain as computer **A** and intercepts the ARP request for computer **A**. Then, computer **X** does the following things:

- It pretends to be computer **A** and responds to computer **B**.
- It pretends to be computer **B** and sends a message to computer **A**.

As a result, all the communication between computer **A** and computer **B** passes through computer **X**. Computer **X** can read and alter the information passed between them.

24.1.2.1 ARP Inspection and MAC Address Filters

When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. You can configure how long the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.

These MAC address filters are different than regular MAC address filters (Chapter 10 on page 103).

- They are stored only in volatile memory.
- They do not use the same space in memory that regular MAC address filters use.

- They appear only in the **ARP Inspection** screens and commands, not in the **MAC Address Filter** screens and commands.

24.1.2.2 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for ARP inspection. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on untrusted ports.

The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.

The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high.

24.1.2.3 Syslog

The Switch can send syslog messages to the specified syslog server (Chapter 34 on page 301) when it forwards or discards ARP packets. The Switch can consolidate log messages and send log messages in batches to make this mechanism more efficient.

24.1.2.4 Configuring ARP Inspection

Follow these steps to configure ARP inspection on the Switch.

1. Configure DHCP snooping. See Section 24.1.1.4 on page 207.

   Note: It is recommended you enable DHCP snooping at least one day before you enable ARP inspection so that the Switch has enough time to build the binding table.

2. Enable ARP inspection on each VLAN.

3. Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of ARP packets that each port can receive per second.

24.2 IP Source Guard

Use this screen to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns

the bindings by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings). To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**.

Figure 96 IP Source Guard

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 70 IP Source Guard

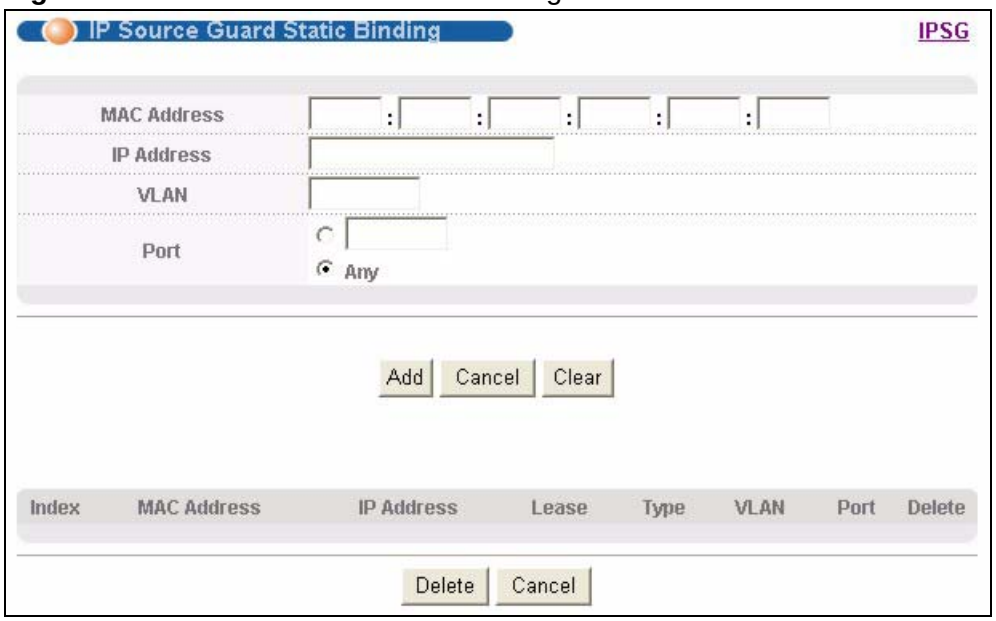
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how many days, hours, minutes, and seconds the binding is valid; for example, **2d3h4m5s** means the binding is still valid for 2 days, 3 hours, 4 minutes and 5 seconds. This field displays **infinity** if the binding is always valid (for example, a static binding).
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. **dhcp-snooping**: This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.

24.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding

Use this screen to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID as an existing static binding, the

new static binding replaces the original one. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding**.

Figure 97 IP Source Guard Static Binding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 IP Source Guard Static Binding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
VLAN	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	Specify the port(s) in the binding. If this binding has one port, select the first radio button and enter the port number in the field to the right. If this binding applies to all ports, select **Any**.
Add	Click this to create the specified static binding or to update an existing one.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected static binding or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.

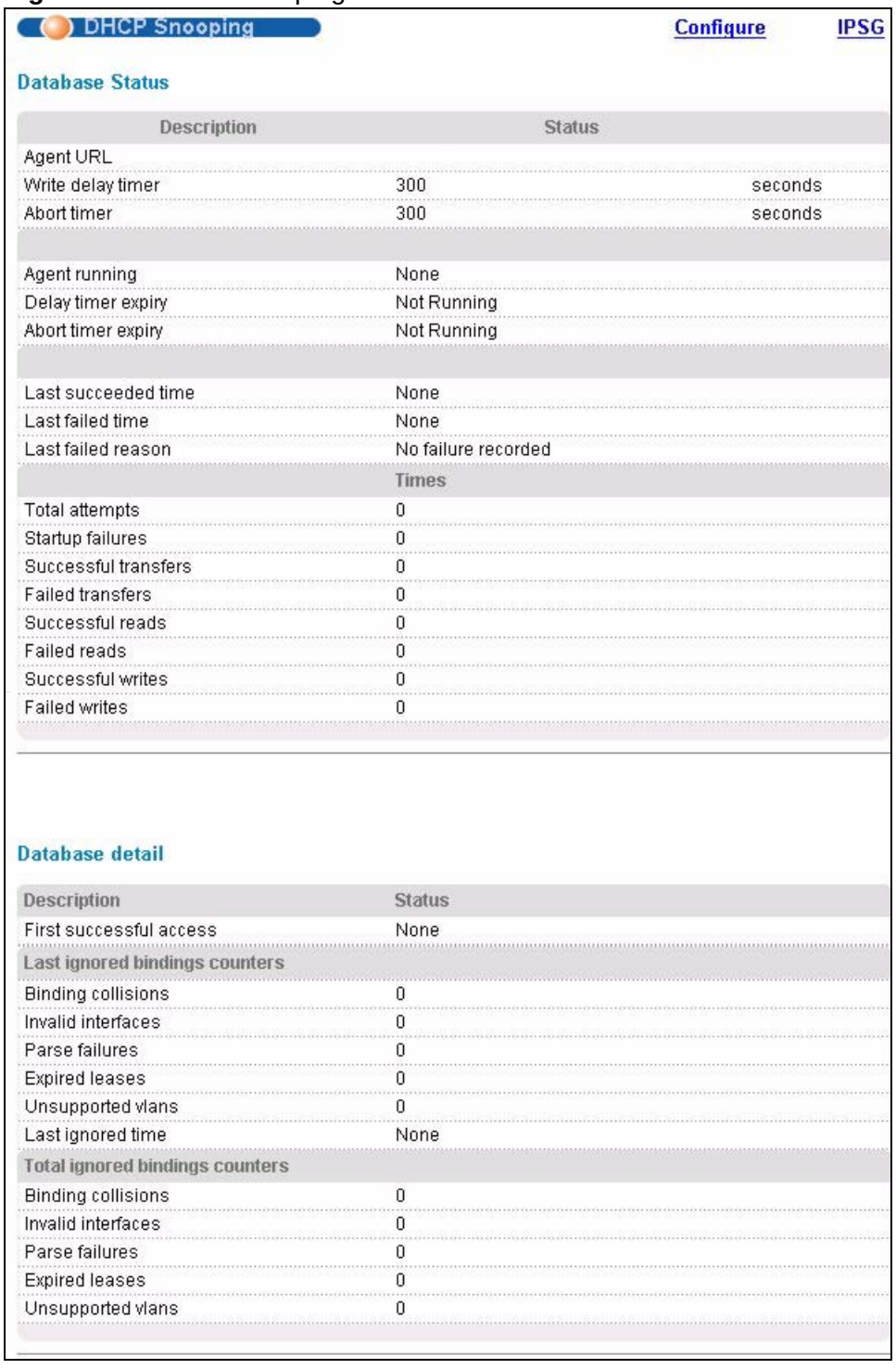
Table 71 IP Source Guard Static Binding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.
Delete	Select this, and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

24.4 DHCP Snooping

Use this screen to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping**.

Figure 98 DHCP Snooping



DHCP Snooping

Configure IPSG

Database Status

Description	Status	
Agent URL		
Write delay timer	300	seconds
Abort timer	300	seconds
Agent running	None	
Delay timer expiry	Not Running	
Abort timer expiry	Not Running	
Last succeeded time	None	
Last failed time	None	
Last failed reason	No failure recorded	
	Times	
Total attempts	0	
Startup failures	0	
Successful transfers	0	
Failed transfers	0	
Successful reads	0	
Failed reads	0	
Successful writes	0	
Failed writes	0	

Database detail

Description	Status
First successful access	None
Last ignored bindings counters	
Binding collisions	0
Invalid interfaces	0
Parse failures	0
Expired leases	0
Unsupported vlans	0
Last ignored time	None
Total ignored bindings counters	
Binding collisions	0
Invalid interfaces	0
Parse failures	0
Expired leases	0
Unsupported vlans	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 DHCP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Database Status	
	This section displays the current settings for the DHCP snooping database. You can configure them in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 24.5 on page 217.
Agent URL	This field displays the location of the DHCP snooping database.
Write delay timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Abort timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database after the current bindings change.
	This section displays information about the current update and the next update of the DHCP snooping database.
Agent running	This field displays the status of the current update or access of the DHCP snooping database. **none**: The Switch is not accessing the DHCP snooping database. **read**: The Switch is loading dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database. **write**: The Switch is updating the DHCP snooping database.
Delay timer expiry	This field displays how much longer (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete the current update before it gives up. It displays **Not Running** if the Switch is not updating the DHCP snooping database right now.
Abort timer expiry	This field displays when (in seconds) the Switch is going to update the DHCP snooping database again. It displays **Not Running** if the current bindings have not changed since the last update.
	This section displays information about the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database.
Last succeeded time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Last failed time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
Last failed reason	This field displays the reason the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
	This section displays historical information about the number of times the Switch successfully or unsuccessfully read or updated the DHCP snooping database.
Total attempts	This field displays the number of times the Switch has tried to access the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Startup failures	This field displays the number of times the Switch could not create or read the DHCP snooping database when the Switch started up or a new URL is configured for the DHCP snooping database.

Table 72 DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Successful transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from or updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from or update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Successful reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from the DHCP snooping database.
Successful writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Database detail	
First successful access	This field displays the first time the Switch accessed the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Last ignored bindings counters	This section displays the number of times and the reasons the Switch ignored bindings the last time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.
Last ignored time	This field displays the last time the Switch ignored any bindings for any reason from the DHCP binding database.
Total ignored bindings counters	This section displays the reasons the Switch has ignored bindings any time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.

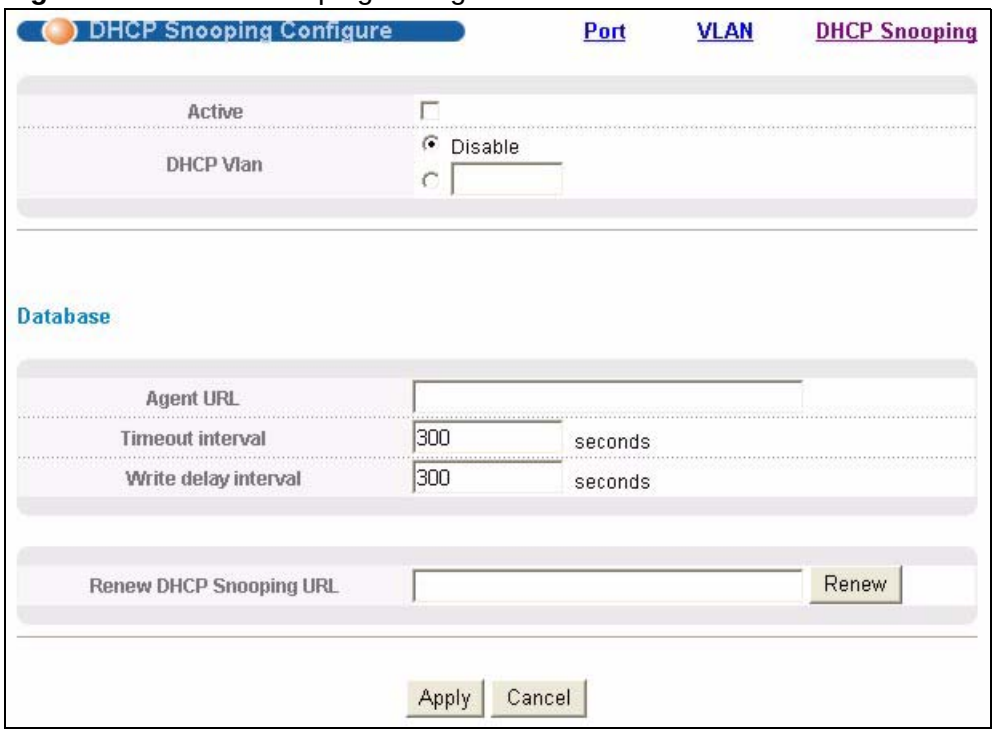
Table 72 DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.

24.5 DHCP Snooping Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database. The DHCP snooping database stores the current bindings on a secure, external TFTP server so that they are still available after a restart. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure**.

Figure 99 DHCP Snooping Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 DHCP Snooping Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports. Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
DHCP Vlan	Select a VLAN ID if you want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to DHCP servers on a specific VLAN. Note: You have to enable DHCP snooping on the DHCP VLAN too. You can enable **Option82** in the **DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure** screen (Section 24.5.2 on page 220) to help the DHCP servers distinguish between DHCP requests from different VLAN. Select **Disable** if you do not want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to a specific VLAN.
Database	If **Timeout interval** is greater than **Write delay interval**, it is possible that the next update is scheduled to occur before the current update has finished successfully or timed out. In this case, the Switch waits to start the next update until it completes the current one.
Agent URL	Enter the location of the DHCP snooping database. The location should be expressed like this: **tftp://{domain name or IP address}/directory, if applicable/file name**; for example, **tftp://192.168.10.1/database.txt.**
Timeout interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Write delay interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database the first time the current bindings change after an update. Once the next update is scheduled, additional changes in current bindings are automatically included in the next update.
Renew DHCP Snooping URL	Enter the location of a DHCP snooping database, and click **Renew** if you want the Switch to load it. You can use this to load dynamic bindings from a different DHCP snooping database than the one specified in **Agent URL**. When the Switch loads dynamic bindings from a DHCP snooping database, it does not discard the current dynamic bindings first. If there is a conflict, the Switch keeps the dynamic binding in volatile memory and updates the **Binding collisions** counter in the **DHCP Snooping** screen (Section 24.4 on page 213).

Table 73 DHCP Snooping Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

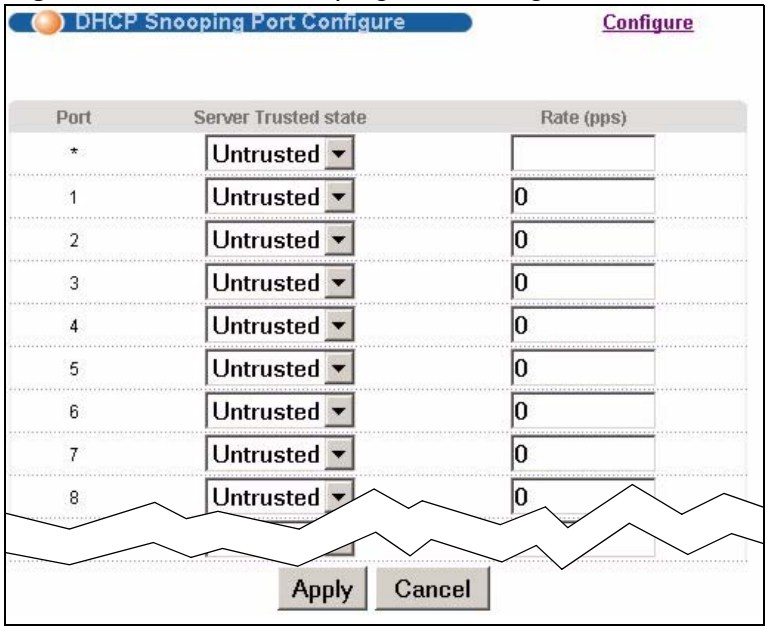
24.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port**.

Figure 100 DHCP Snooping Port Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

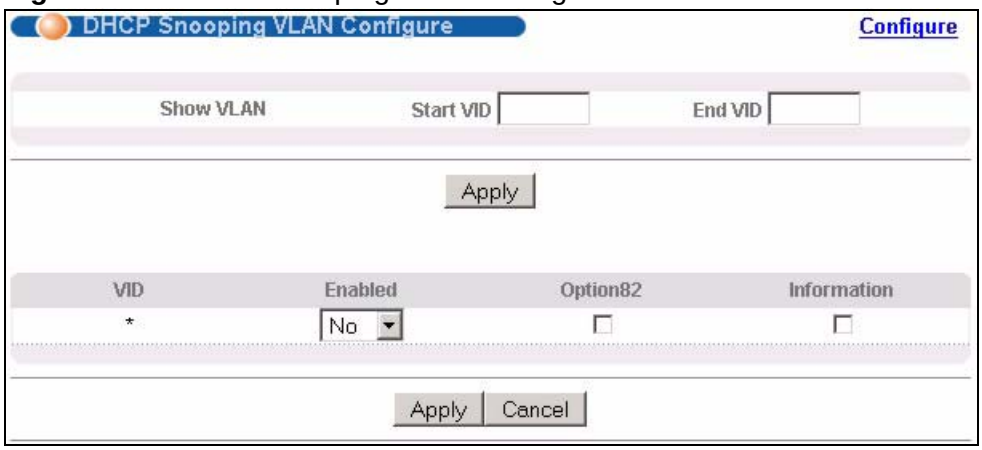
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Server Trusted state	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations: • The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK). • The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings. • The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum number for DHCP packets (1-2048) that the Switch receives from each port each second. The Switch discards any additional DHCP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit, which is recommended for trusted ports.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

24.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information (Chapter 29 on page 249) to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN. To

open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 101 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable DHCP snooping on the VLAN. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch and specify trusted ports. Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
Option82	Select this to have the Switch add the slot number, port number and VLAN ID to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 24.5 on page 217.
Information	Select this to have the Switch add the system name to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can configure the system name in the **General Setup** screen. See Chapter 7 on page 63. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 24.5 on page 217.

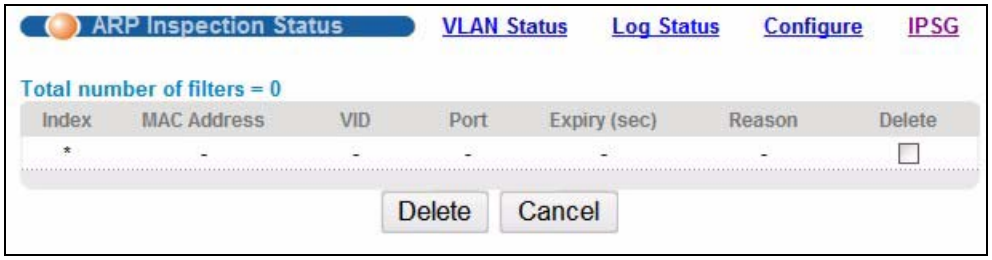
Table 75 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

24.6 ARP Inspection Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection**.

Figure 102 ARP Inspection Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 ARP Inspection Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total number of filters	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC address filter.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC address filter.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.
Expiry (sec)	This field displays how long (in seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch. You can also delete the record manually (**Delete**).

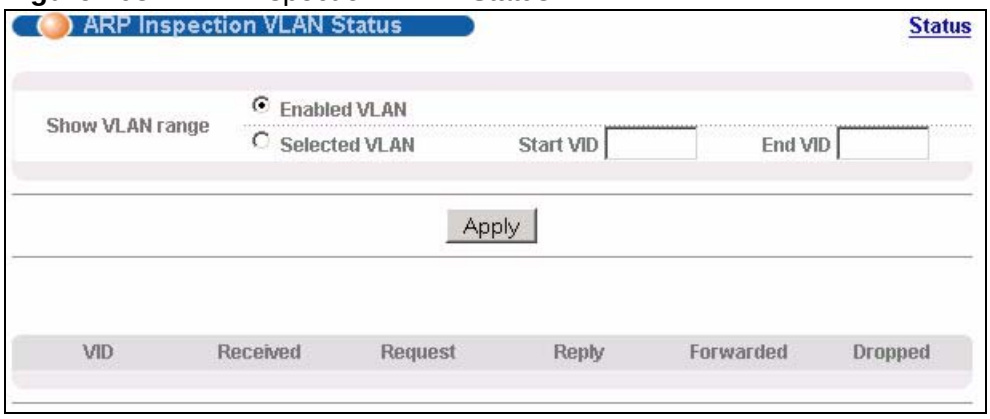
Table 76 ARP Inspection Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	This field displays the reason the ARP packet was discarded. **MAC+VLAN**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were not in the binding table. **IP**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were in the binding table, but the IP address was not valid. **Port**: The MAC address, VLAN ID, and IP address were in the binding table, but the port number was not valid.
Delete	Select this and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.
Delete	Click this to remove the selected entries.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

24.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

Use this screen to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status**.

Figure 103 ARP Inspection VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 77 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN range	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to look at in the section below.
Enabled VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs on which ARP inspection is enabled in the section below.
Selected VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs in a specific range in the section below. Then, enter the lowest VLAN ID (**Start VID**) and the highest VLAN ID (**End VID**) you want to look at.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.

Table 77 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above.
Received	This field displays the total number of ARP packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Request	This field displays the total number of ARP Request packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Reply	This field displays the total number of ARP Reply packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Forwarded	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch forwarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Dropped	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch discarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

24.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status

Use this screen to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status**.

Figure 104 ARP Inspection Log Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 78 ARP Inspection Log Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clearing log status table	Click **Apply** to remove all the log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
Total number of logs	This field displays the number of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. If one or more log messages are dropped due to unavailable buffer, there is an entry called **overflow** with the current number of dropped log messages.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each log message.
Port	This field displays the source port of the ARP packet.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID of the ARP packet.

Table 78 ARP Inspection Log Status (continued)

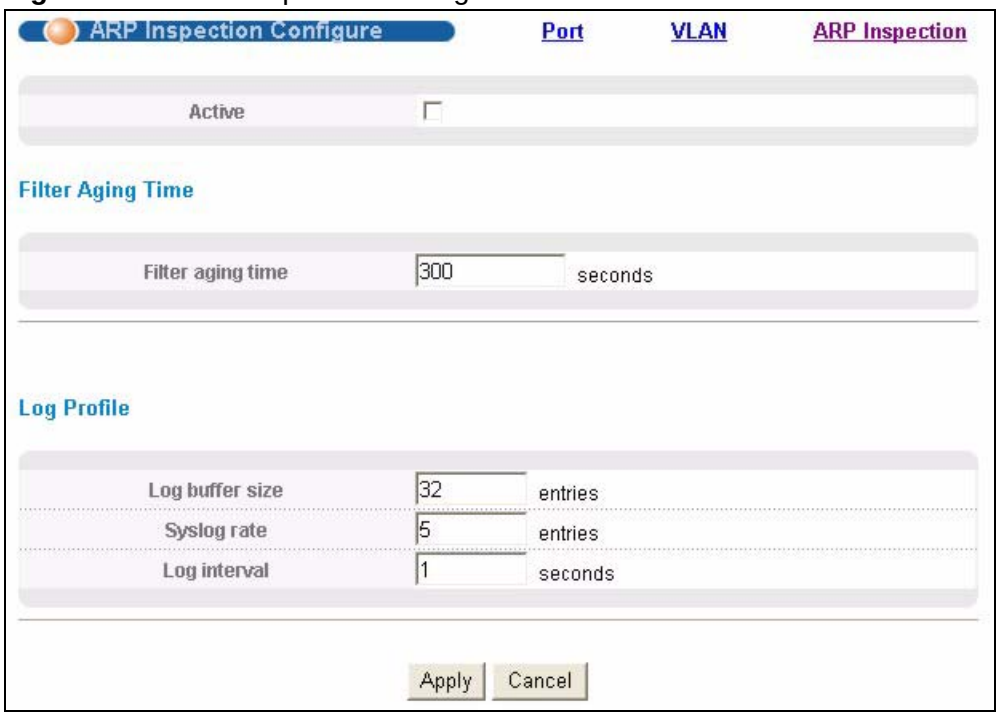
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sender Mac	This field displays the source MAC address of the ARP packet.
Sender IP	This field displays the source IP address of the ARP packet.
Num Pkts	This field displays the number of ARP packets that were consolidated into this log message. The Switch consolidates identical log messages generated by ARP packets in the log consolidation interval into one log message. You can configure this interval in the **ARP Inspection Configure** screen. See Section 24.7 on page 225.
Reason	This field displays the reason the log message was generated. **dhcp deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a dynamic binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **static deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because there were no bindings with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **dhcp permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a dynamic binding. **static permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a static binding. In the **ARP Inspection VLAN Configure** screen, you can configure the Switch to generate log messages when ARP packets are discarded or forwarded based on the VLAN ID of the ARP packet. See Section 24.7.2 on page 229.
Time	This field displays when the log message was generated.

24.7 ARP Inspection Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global

settings for the ARP inspection log. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure**.

Figure 105 ARP Inspection Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 79 ARP Inspection Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You still have to enable ARP inspection on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.
Filter Aging Time	
Filter aging time	This setting has no effect on existing MAC address filters. Enter how long (1-2147483647 seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically deletes the MAC address filter afterwards. Type 0 if you want the MAC address filter to be permanent.
Log Profile	

Table 79 ARP Inspection Configure (continued)

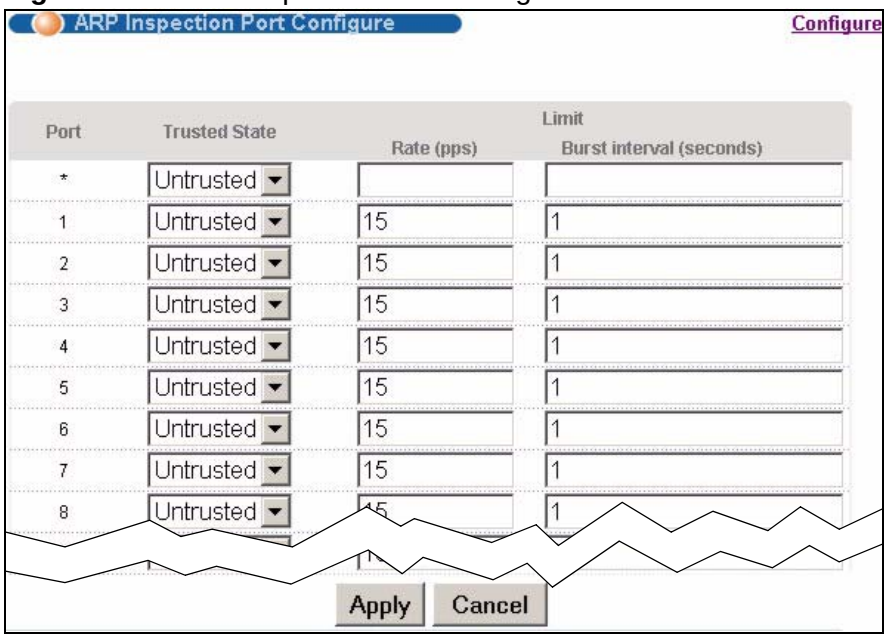
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Log buffer size	Enter the maximum number (0-1024) of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and have not been sent to the syslog server yet. Make sure this number is appropriate for the specified **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**. If the number of log messages in the Switch exceeds this number, the Switch stops recording log messages and simply starts counting the number of entries that were dropped due to unavailable buffer. Click **Clearing log status table** in the **ARP Inspection Log Status** screen to clear the log and reset this counter. See Section 24.6.2 on page 224.
Syslog rate	Type the maximum number of syslog messages generated by ARP packets the Switch can send to the syslog server in one batch. This number is expressed as a rate because the batch frequency is determined by the **Log Interval**. You must configure the syslog server (Chapter 34 on page 301) to use this setting. Enter "0" if you do not want the Switch to send log messages generated by ARP packets to the syslog server. The **Syslog rate** and **Log interval** settings interact. If the **Syslog rate** number X is greater than **Log interval** seconds Y, X divided by Y system messages are sent every second. Otherwise, one message is sent every Y divided by X seconds. For example: • If the Syslog rate is 5 and the Log interval value is 2, two messages are sent every second. • If the Syslog rate is 3 and the Log interval value is 6, one message is sent every two seconds.
Log interval	Type how often (0-86400 seconds) the Switch sends a batch of syslog messages to the syslog server. Enter 0 if you want the Switch to send syslog messages immediately. See **Syslog rate** for information on the relationship between **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

24.7.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives

ARP packets on each untrusted port. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port**.

Figure 106 ARP Inspection Port Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 80 ARP Inspection Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the ***** port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Trusted State	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason. The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations: • The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports.
Limit	Rate and Burst Interval settings have no effect on trusted ports.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum rate (0-2048 packets per second) at which the Switch receives ARP packets from each port. The Switch discards any additional ARP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit.

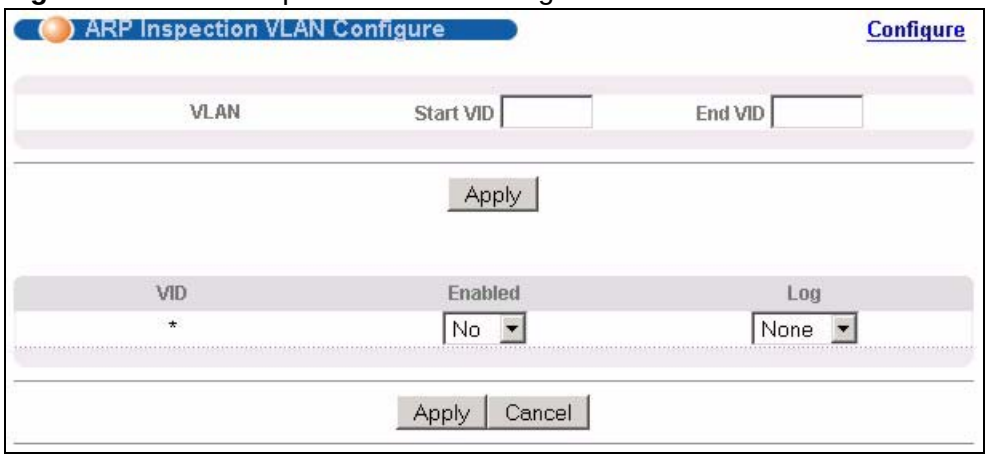
Table 80 ARP Inspection Port Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Burst interval (seconds)	The burst interval is the length of time over which the rate of ARP packets is monitored for each port. For example, if the Rate is 15 pps and the burst interval is 1 second, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 15 ARP packets in every one-second interval. If the burst interval is 5 seconds, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 75 ARP packets in every five-second interval. Enter the length (1-15 seconds) of the burst interval.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

24.7.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 107 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.

Table 81 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable ARP inspection on the VLAN. Select **No** to disable ARP inspection on the VLAN.
Log	Specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from the VLAN. **None**: The Switch does not generate any log messages when it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Deny**: The Switch generates log messages when it discards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Permit**: The Switch generates log messages when it forwards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **All**: The Switch generates log messages every time it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

25

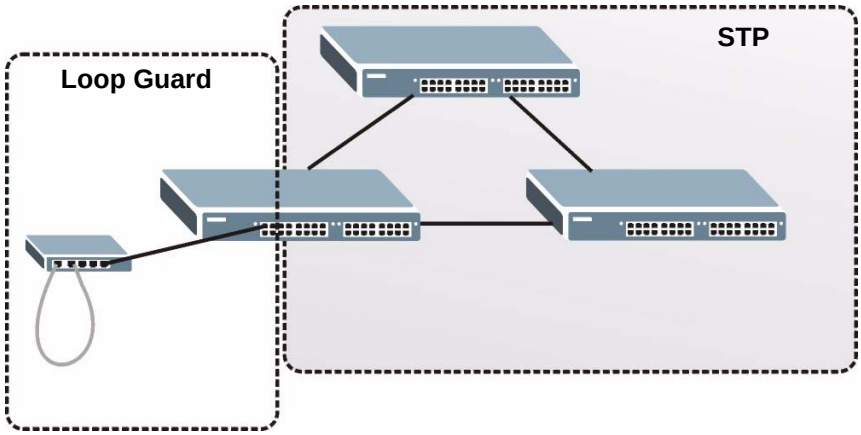
Loop Guard

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to guard against loops on the edge of your network.

25.1 Loop Guard Overview

Loop guard allows you to configure the Switch to shut down a port if it detects that packets sent out on that port loop back to the Switch. While you can use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to prevent loops in the core of your network. STP cannot prevent loops that occur on the edge of your network.

Figure 108 Loop Guard vs STP



Loop guard is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

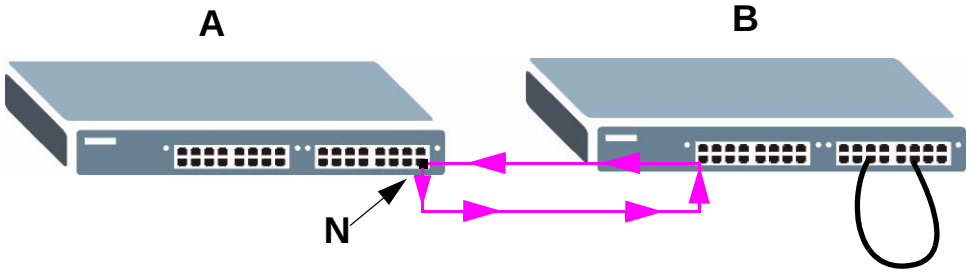
If a switch (not in loop state) connects to a switch in loop state, then it will be affected by the switch in loop state in the following way:

- It will receive broadcast messages sent out from the switch in loop state.

- It will receive its own broadcast messages that it sends out as they loop back. It will then re-broadcast those messages again.

The following figure shows port **N** on switch **A** connected to switch **B**. Switch **B** is in loop state. When broadcast or multicast packets leave port **N** and reach switch **B**, they are sent back to port **N** on **A** as they are rebroadcast from **B**.

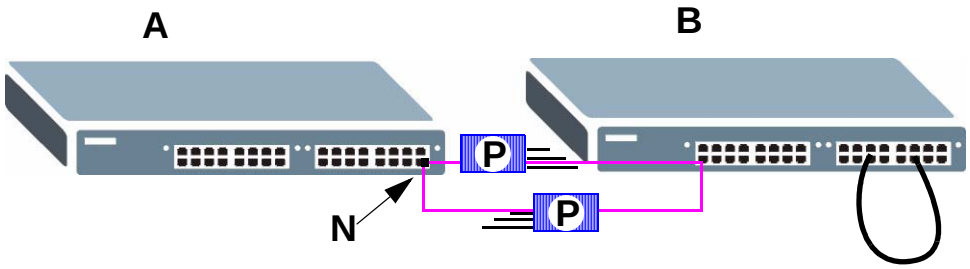
Figure 109 Switch in Loop State



The loop guard feature checks to see if a loop guard enabled port is connected to a switch in loop state. This is accomplished by periodically sending a probe packet and seeing if the packet returns on the same port. If this is the case, the Switch will shut down the port connected to the switch in loop state.

The following figure shows a loop guard enabled port **N** on switch **A** sending a probe packet **P** to switch **B**. Since switch **B** is in loop state, the probe packet **P** returns to port **N** on **A**. The Switch then shuts down port **N** to ensure that the rest of the network is not affected by the switch in loop state.

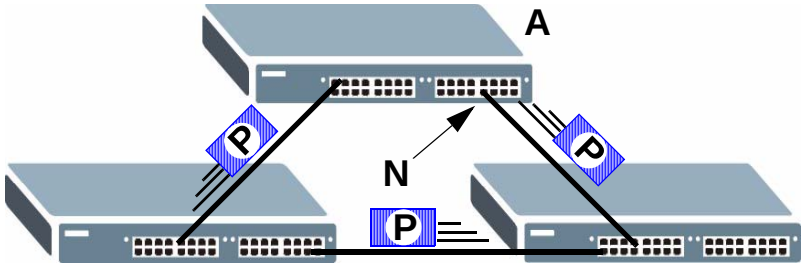
Figure 110 Loop Guard - Probe Packet



The Switch also shuts down port **N** if the probe packet returns to switch **A** on any other port. In other words loop guard also protects against standard network loops. The following figure illustrates three switches forming a loop. A sample path of the loop guard probe packet is also shown. In this example, the probe packet is sent from port **N** and returns on another port. As long as loop guard is enabled on

port **N**. The Switch will shut down port **N** if it detects that the probe packet has returned to the Switch.

Figure 111 Loop Guard - Network Loop



Note: After resolving the loop problem on your network you can re-activate the disabled port via the web configurator (see Section 7.7 on page 73) or via commands.

25.2 Loop Guard Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Loop Guard** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: The loop guard feature can not be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP or MSTP) enabled.

Figure 112 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable loop guard on the Switch. The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop guard feature.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the loop guard feature on this port. The Switch sends probe packets from this port to check if the Switch it is connected to is in loop state. If the Switch that this port is connected is in loop state the Switch will shut down this port. Clear this check box to disable the loop guard feature.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART IV
IP Application

Static Routing (237)

RIP (239)

Differentiated Services (241)

DHCP (249)

VRRP (259)

26

Static Routing

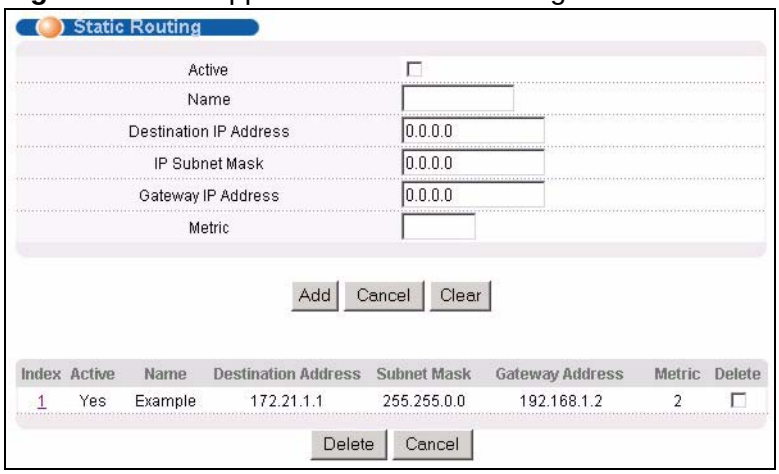
This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

26.1 Configuring Static Routing

Static routes tell the Switch how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually.

Click **IP Application** > **Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 113 IP Application > Static Routing



The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

Table 83 IP Application > Static Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.

Table 83 IP Application > Static Routing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your Switch.
Metric	The metric represents the “cost” of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click **Add** to insert a new static route to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the static route is activated and **NO** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purposes only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is the immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

27

RIP

This chapter shows you how to configure RIP (Routing Information Protocol).

27.1 RIP Overview

RIP (Routing Information Protocol) allows a routing device to exchange routing information with other routers. The **Direction** field controls the sending and receiving of RIP packets. When set to:

- **Both -** the Switch will broadcast its routing table periodically and incorporate the RIP information that it receives.
- **Incoming -** the Switch will not send any RIP packets but will accept all RIP packets received.
- **Outgoing -** the Switch will send out RIP packets but will not accept any RIP packets received.
- **None -** the Switch will not send any RIP packets and will ignore any RIP packets received.

The **Version** field controls the format and the broadcasting method of the RIP packets that the Switch sends (it recognizes both formats when receiving). **RIP-1** is universally supported; but RIP-2 carries more information. **RIP-1** is probably adequate for most networks, unless you have an unusual network topology.

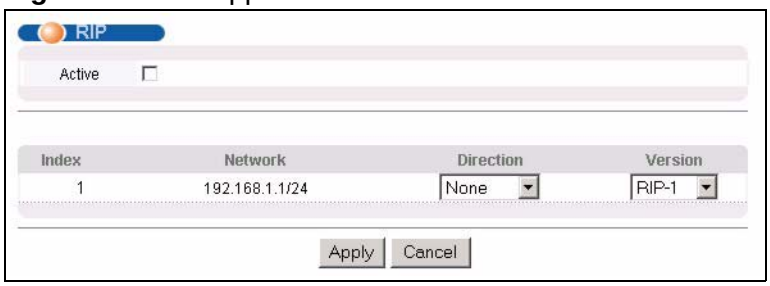
Both **RIP-2B** and **RIP-2M** send the routing data in RIP-2 format; the difference being that **RIP-2B** uses subnet broadcasting while **RIP-2M** uses multicasting.

27.2 Configuring RIP

Click **IP Application** > **RIP** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. You cannot manually configure a new entry. Each entry in the table is

automatically created when you configure a new IP domain in the **IP Setup** screen (refer to Section 7.6 on page 71).

Figure 114 IP Application > RIP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 84 IP Application > RIP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable RIP on the Switch.
Index	This field displays the index number of an IP interface.
Network	This field displays the IP interface configured on the Switch. Refer to the section on IP Setup for more information on configuring IP domains.
Direction	Select the RIP direction from the drop-down list box. Choices are **Outgoing**, **Incoming**, **Both** and **None**.
Version	Select the RIP version from the drop-down list box. Choices are **RIP-1**, **RIP-2B** and **RIP-2M**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28

Differentiated Services

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the Switch.

28.1 DiffServ Overview

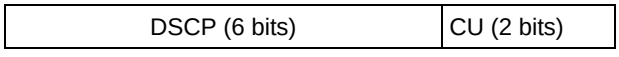
Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

28.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels and the remaining 2 bits are defined as currently unused (CU). The following figure illustrates the DS field.

Figure 115 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

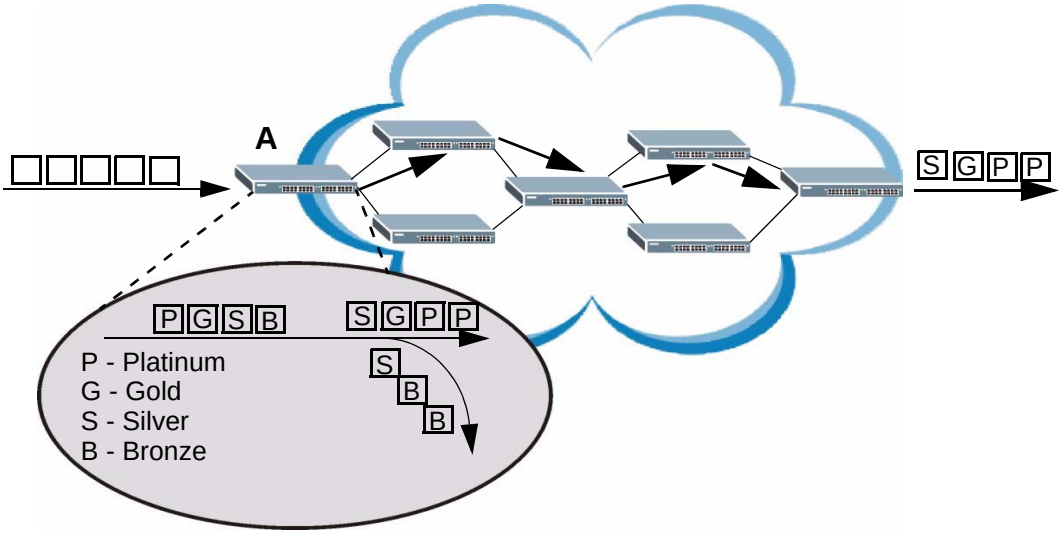
The DSCP value determines the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets as it is forwarded across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different

kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

28.1.2 DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a DiffServ network consisting of a group of directly connected DiffServ-compliant network devices. The boundary node (**A** in Figure 116) in a DiffServ network classifies (marks with a DSCP value) the incoming packets into different traffic flows (**Platinum**, **Gold**, **Silver**, **Bronze**) based on the configured marking rules. A network administrator can then apply various traffic policies to the traffic flows. For example, one traffic policy would be to give higher drop precedence to one traffic flow over others. In our example packets in the **Bronze** traffic flow are more likely to be dropped when congestion occurs than the packets in the **Platinum** traffic flow as they move across the DiffServ network.

Figure 116 DiffServ Network



28.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing

Traffic policing is the limiting of the input or output transmission rate of a class of traffic on the basis of user-defined criteria. Traffic policing methods measure traffic flows against user-defined criteria and identify it as either conforming, exceeding or violating the criteria.

Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM, defined in RFC 2698) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to two user-defined rates: the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR). The CIR

specifies the average rate at which packets are admitted to the network. The PIR is greater than or equal to the CIR. CIR and PIR values are based on the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth respectively as negotiated between a service provider and client.

Two Rate Three Color Marker evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green. After TRTCM is configured and DiffServ is enabled the following actions are performed on the colored packets:

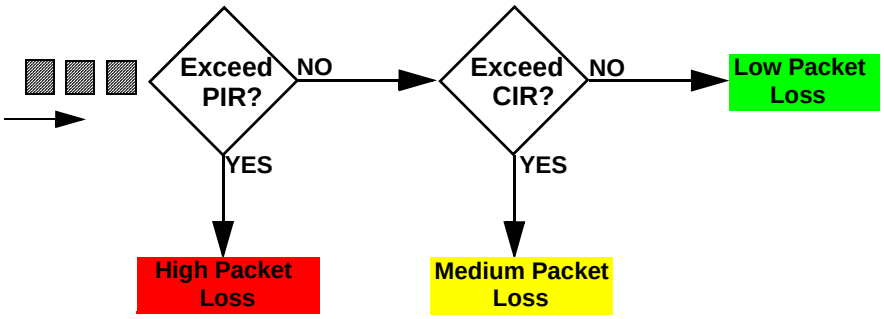
- Red (high loss priority level) packets are dropped.
- Yellow (medium loss priority level) packets are dropped if there is congestion on the network.
- Green (low loss priority level) packets are forwarded.

TRTCM operates in one of two modes: color-blind or color-aware. In color-blind mode, packets are marked based on evaluating against the PIR and CIR regardless of if they have previously been marked or not. In the color-aware mode, packets are marked based on both existing color and evaluation against the PIR and CIR. If the packets do not match any of colors, then the packets proceed unchanged.

28.2.1 TRTCM - Color-blind Mode

All packets are evaluated against the PIR. If a packet exceeds the PIR it is marked red. Otherwise it is evaluated against the CIR. If it exceeds the CIR then it is marked yellow. Finally, if it is below the CIR then it is marked green.

Figure 117 TRTCM - Color-blind Mode



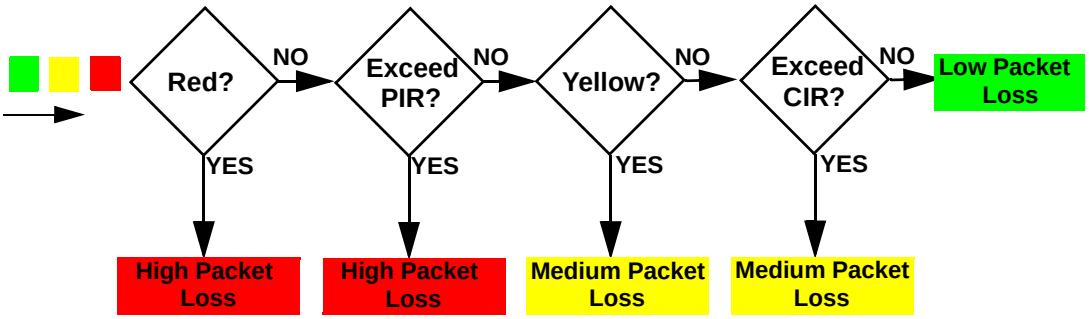
28.2.2 TRTCM - Color-aware Mode

In color-aware mode the evaluation of the packets uses the existing packet loss priority. TRTCM can increase a packet loss priority of a packet but it cannot

decrease it. Packets that have been previously marked red or yellow can only be marked with an equal or higher packet loss priority.

Packets marked red (high packet loss priority) continue to be red without evaluation against the PIR or CIR. Packets marked yellow can only be marked red or remain yellow so they are only evaluated against the PIR. Only the packets marked green are first evaluated against the PIR and then if they don't exceed the PIR level are they evaluated against the CIR.

Figure 118 TRTCM - Color-aware Mode



28.3 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the selected port(s).

Click **IP Application** > **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 119 IP Application > DiffServ

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 85 IP Application > DiffServ

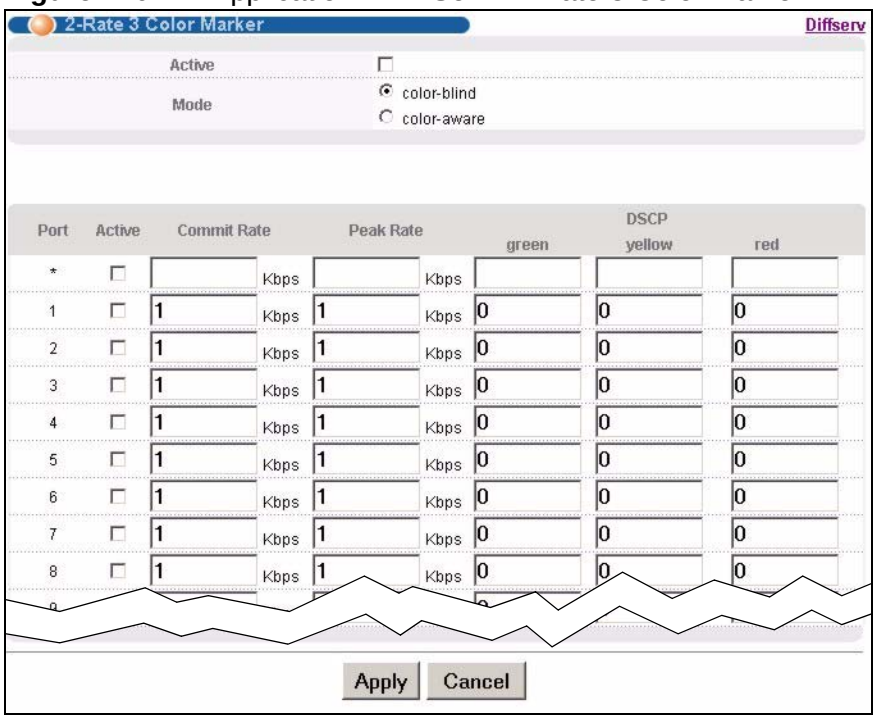
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select **Active** to enable DiffServ on the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings

Use this screen to configure TRTCM settings. Click the **2-rate 3 Color Marker** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You cannot enable both TRTCM and Bandwidth Control at the same time.

Figure 120 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM (Two Rate Three Color Marker) on the Switch. The Switch evaluates and marks the packets based on the TRTCM settings. Note: You must also activate **DiffServ** on the Switch and the individual ports for the Switch to drop red (high loss priority) colored packets.
Mode	Select **color-blind** to have the Switch treat all incoming packets as uncolored. All incoming packets are evaluated against the CIR and PIR. Select **color-aware** to treat the packets as marked by some preceding entity. Incoming packets are evaluated based on their existing color. Incoming packets that are not marked proceed through the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM on the port.

Table 86 IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Commit Rate	Specify the Commit Information Rate (CIR) for this port.
Peak Rate	Specify the Peak Information Rate (PIR) for this port.
DSCP	Use this section to specify the DSCP values that you want to assign to packets based on the color they are marked via TRTCM.
green	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with low packet loss priority.
yellow	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with medium packet loss priority.
red	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with high packet loss priority.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE 802.1p mapping to allow the Switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE 802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping.

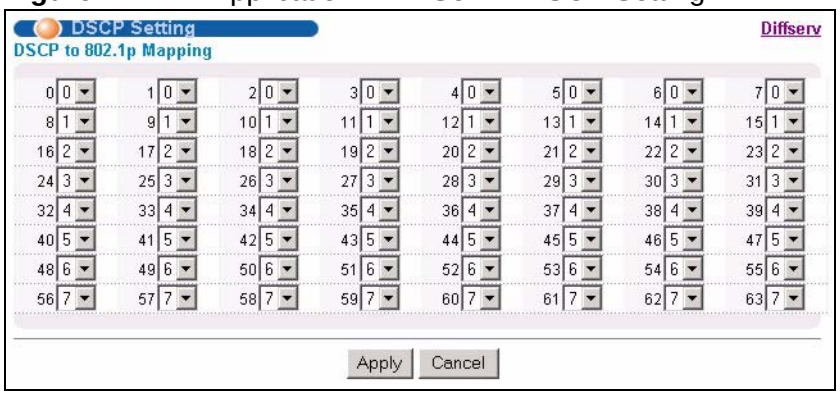
Table 87 Default DSCP-IEEE 802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE 802.1p	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

28.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping, click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 121 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 88 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 ... 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number. To set the IEEE 802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29

DHCP

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

29.1 DHCP Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Switch as a DHCP server or a DHCP relay agent. When configured as a server, the Switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you configure the Switch as a relay agent, then the Switch forwards DHCP requests to DHCP server on your network. If you don't configure the Switch as a DHCP server or relay agent then you must have a DHCP server in the broadcast domain of the client computers or else the client computers must be configured manually.

29.1.1 DHCP Modes

The Switch can be configured as a DHCP server or DHCP relay agent.

- If you configure the Switch as a DHCP server, it will maintain the pool of IP addresses along with subnet masks, DNS server and default gateway information and distribute them to your LAN computers.
- If there is already a DHCP server on your network, then you can configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the Switch receives a request from a computer on your network, it contacts the DHCP server for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

29.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options

The DHCP configuration on the Switch is divided into **Global** and **VLAN** screens. The screen you should use for configuration depends on the DHCP services you want to offer the DHCP clients on your network. Choose the configuration screen based on the following criteria:

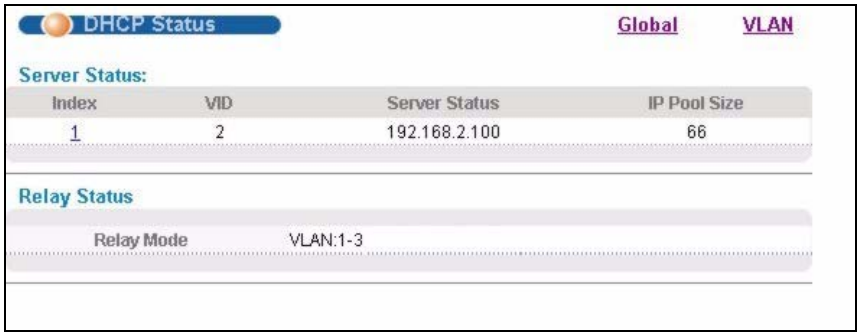
- **Global** - The Switch forwards all DHCP requests to the same DHCP server.

- **VLAN** - The Switch is configured on a VLAN by VLAN basis. The Switch can be configured as a DHCP server for one VLAN and at the same time the Switch can be configured to relay DHCP requests for clients in another VLAN.

29.2 DHCP Status

Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Status** screen displays.

Figure 122 IP Application > DHCP Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 89 IP Application > DHCP Status

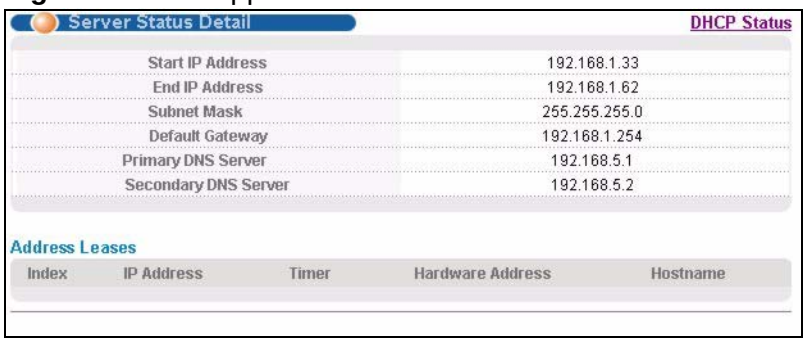
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Status	This section displays configuration settings related to the Switch's DHCP server mode.
Index	This is the index number.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID for which the Switch is a DHCP server.
Server Status	This field displays the starting DHCP client IP address.
IP Pool Size	This field displays the number of IP addresses that can be assigned to clients.
Relay Status	This section displays configuration settings related to the Switch's DHCP relay mode.
Relay Mode	This field displays: • **None** - if the Switch is not configured as a DHCP relay agent. • **Global** - if the Switch is configured as a DHCP relay agent only. • **VLAN** - followed by a VLAN ID if it is configured as a relay agent for specific VLAN(s).

29.3 DHCP Server Status Detail

Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel and then click an existing index number of a DHCP server configuration to view the screen as shown. Use

this screen to view details regarding DHCP server settings configured on the Switch.

Figure 123 IP Application > DHCP > DHCP Server Status Detail



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 90 IP Application > DHCP Server Status Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Start IP Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the IP address pool configured for this DHCP server instance.
End IP Address	This field displays the last IP address of the IP address pool configured for this DHCP server instance.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask value sent to clients from this DHCP server instance.
Default Gateway	This field displays the default gateway value sent to clients from this DHCP server instance.
Primary DNS Server	This field displays the primary DNS server value sent to clients from this DHCP server instance.
Secondary DNS Server	This field displays the secondary DNS server value sent to clients from this DHCP server instance.
Address Leases	This section displays information about the IP addresses this DHCP server issued to clients.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each DHCP request handled by the Switch.
IP Address	This is the IP address issued to a DHCP client.
Timer	This field displays the time remaining before the DHCP client has to renew its IP address.
Hardware Address	This field displays the MAC address of the DHCP client. It may also display **SELF OCCUPIED ADDRESS** if the IP address cannot be used for DHCP because it is already assigned to the Switch itself.
Hostname	This field displays the system name of the client.

29.4 DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

29.4.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field to the **Option 82** field. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

Relay Agent Information can include the **System Name** of the Switch if you select this option. You can change the **System Name** in **Basic Settings** > **General Setup**.

The following describes the DHCP relay information that the Switch sends to the DHCP server:

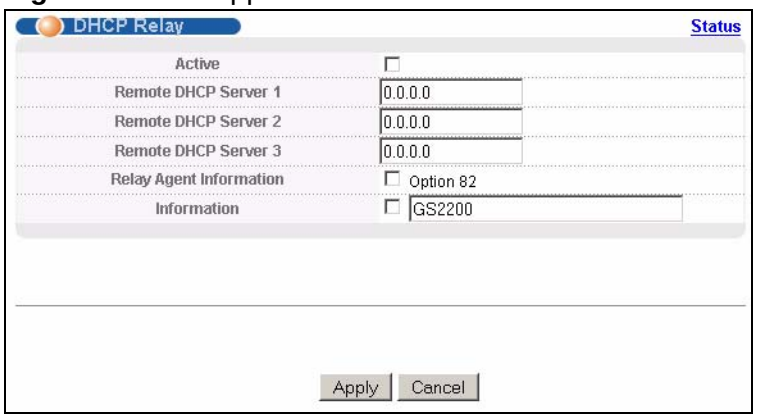
Table 91 Relay Agent Information

FIELD LABELS	DESCRIPTION
Slot ID	(1 byte) This value is always 0 for stand-alone switches.
Port ID	(1 byte) This is the port that the DHCP client is connected to.
VLAN ID	(2 bytes) This is the VLAN that the port belongs to.
Information	(up to 64 bytes) This optional, read-only field is set according to system name set in **Basic Settings > General Setup.**

29.4.2 Configuring DHCP Global Relay

Configure global DHCP relay in the **DHCP Relay** screen. Click **IP Application > DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **Global** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 124 IP Application > DHCP > Global



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

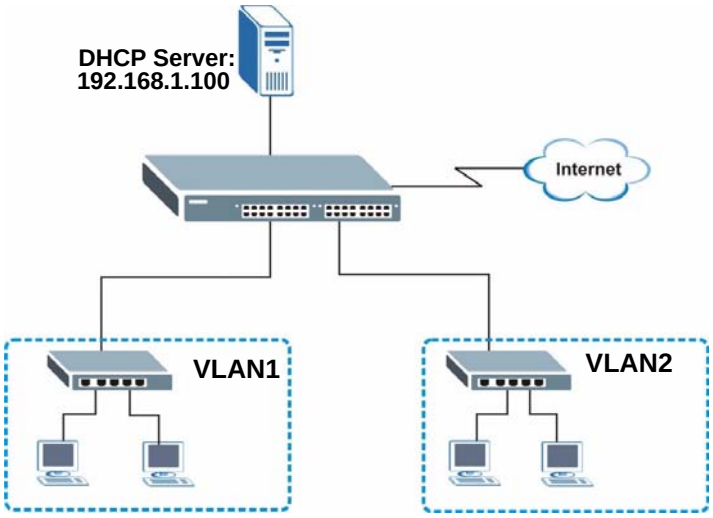
Table 92 IP Application > DHCP > Global

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the **Option 82** check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

29.4.3 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example

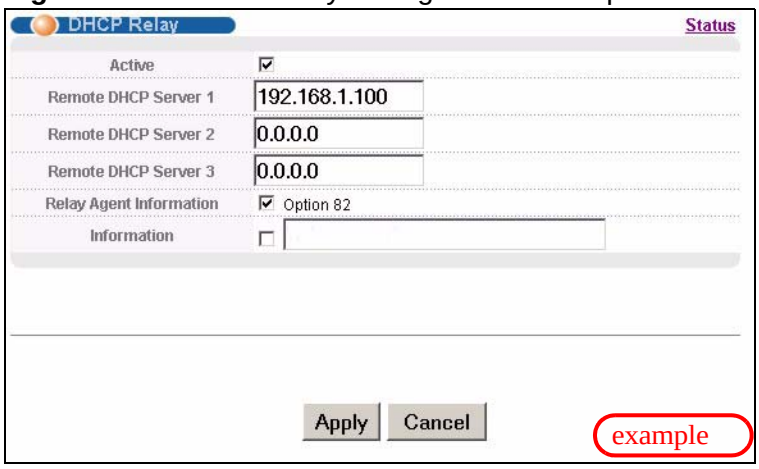
The follow figure shows a network example where the Switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **VLAN1** and **VLAN2** domains. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both domains.

Figure 125 Global DHCP Relay Network Example



Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select the **Option 82** check box to set the Switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

Figure 126 DHCP Relay Configuration Example

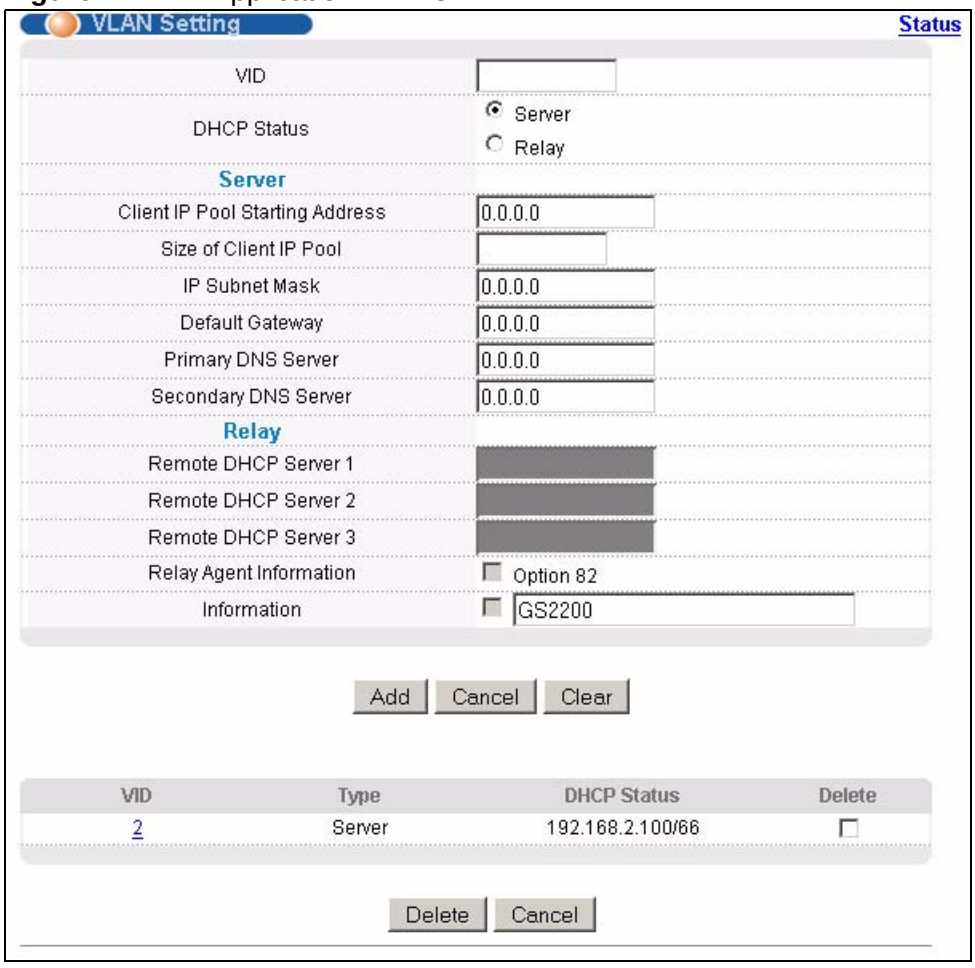


29.5 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings

Use this screen to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients. Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel, then click the **VLAN** link In the **DHCP Status** screen that displays.

Note: You must set up a management IP address for each VLAN that you want to configure DHCP settings for on the Switch. See Section 7.6 on page 71 for information on how to do this.

Figure 127 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 93 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which these DHCP settings apply.
DHCP Status	Select whether the Switch should function as a DHCP **Server** or **Relay** for the specified VID. If you select **Server** then fields related to DHCP relay configuration are grayed out and vice versa.

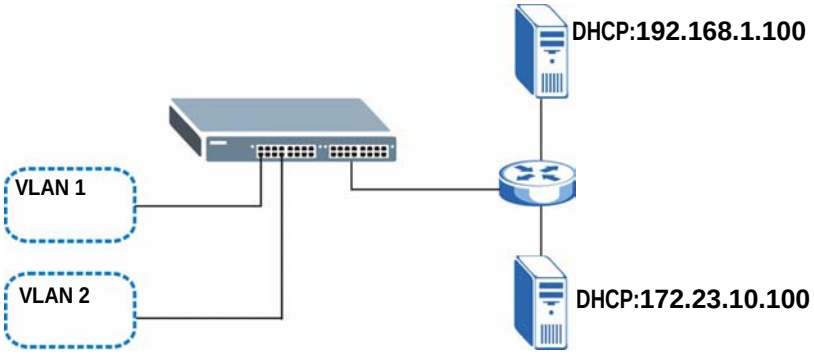
Table 93 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server	Use this section if you want to configure the Switch to function as a DHCP server for this VLAN.
Client IP Pool Starting Address	Specify the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool.
Size of Client IP Pool	Specify the size, or count of the IP address pool. The Switch can issue from 1 to 253 IP addresses to DHCP clients.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for the client IP pool.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default gateway device.
Primary/ Secondary DNS Server	Enter the IP addresses of the DNS servers. The DNS servers are passed to the DHCP clients along with the IP address and the subnet mask.
Relay	Use this section if you want to configure the Switch to function as a DHCP relay for this VLAN.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the **Option 82** check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Type	This field displays **Server** or **Relay** for the DHCP mode.
DHCP Status	For DHCP server configuration, this field displays the starting IP address and the size of the IP address pool. For DHCP relay configuration, this field displays the first remote DHCP server IP address.
Delete	Select the configuration entries you want to remove and click **Delete** to remove them.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

29.5.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs

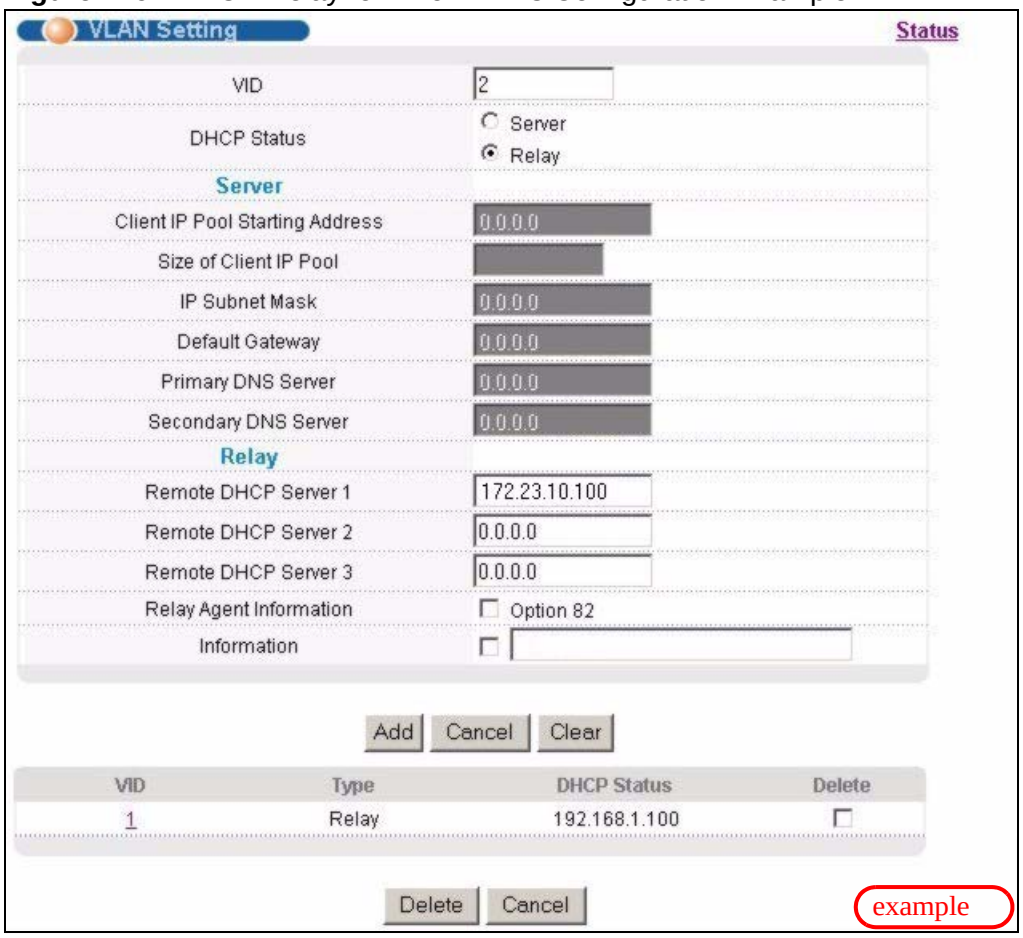
The following example displays two VLANs (VIDs 1 and 2) for a campus network. Two DHCP servers are installed to serve each VLAN. The system is set up to forward DHCP requests from the dormitory rooms (VLAN 1) to the DHCP server with an IP address of 192.168.1.100. Requests from the academic buildings (VLAN 2) are sent to the other DHCP server with an IP address of 172.23.10.100.

Figure 128 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs



For the example network, configure the **VLAN Setting** screen as shown.

Figure 129 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs Configuration Example



30

VRRP

This chapter shows you how to configure and monitor the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) on the Switch.

30.1 VRRP Overview

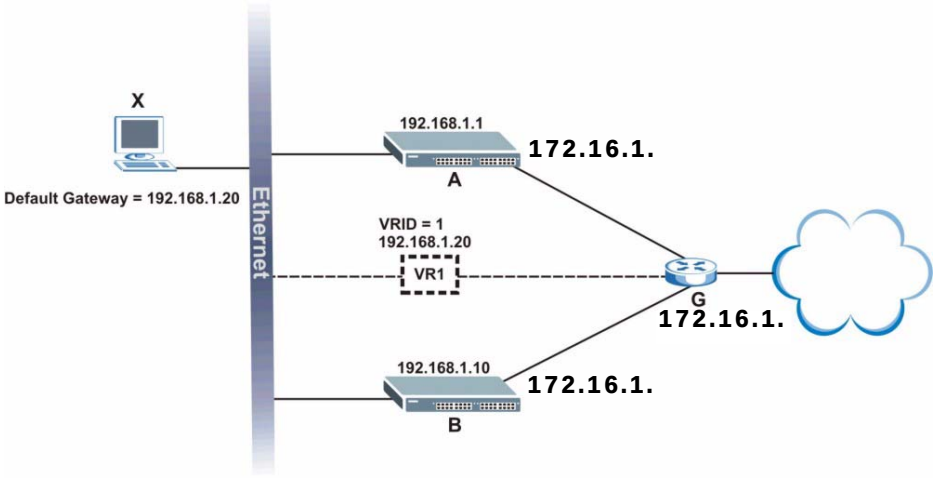
Each host on a network is configured to send packets to a statically configured default gateway (this Switch). The default gateway can become a single point of failure. Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), defined in RFC 2338, allows you to create redundant backup gateways to ensure that the default gateway of a host is always available.

In VRRP, a virtual router (VR) represents a number of physical layer-3 devices. An IP address is associated with the virtual router. A layer-3 device having the same IP address is the preferred master router while the other Layer-3 devices are the backup routers. The master router forwards traffic for the virtual router. When the master router becomes unavailable, a backup router assumes the role of the master router until the master router comes back up and takes over.

The following figure shows a VRRP network example with the switches (**A** and **B**) implementing one virtual router **VR1** to ensure the link between the host **X** and the uplink gateway **G**. Host **X** is configured to use **VR1** (192.168.1.20) as the

default gateway. If switch **A** has a higher priority, it is the master router. Switch **B**, having a lower priority, is the backup router.

Figure 130 VRRP: Example 1

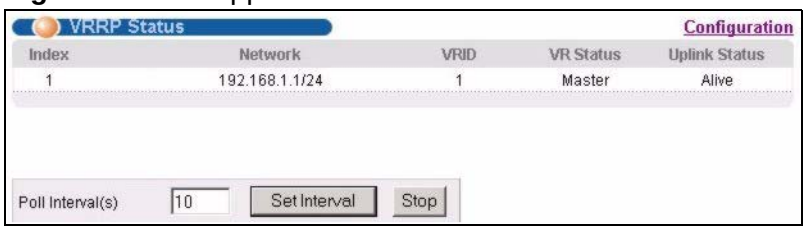


If switch **A** (the master router) is unavailable, switch **B** takes over. Traffic is then processed by switch **B**.

30.2 VRRP Status

Click **IP Application** > **VRRP** in the navigation panel to display the **VRRP Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 131 IP Application > VRRP Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 IP Application > VRRP Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of a rule.
Network	This field displays the IP address and the subnet mask bits of an IP routing domain that is associated to a virtual router.
VRID	This field displays the ID number of the virtual router.

Table 94 IP Application > VRRP Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VR Status	This field displays the status of the virtual router. This field is **Master** indicating that this Switch functions as the master router. This field is **Backup** indicating that this Switch functions as a backup router. This field displays **Init** when this Switch is initiating the VRRP protocol or when the **Uplink Status** field displays **Dead**.
Uplink Status	This field displays the status of the link between this Switch and the uplink gateway. This field is **Alive** indicating that the link between this Switch and the uplink gateway is up. Otherwise, this field is **Dead**. This field displays **Probe** when this Switch is check for the link state.
Poll Interval(s)	The text box displays how often (in seconds) this screen refreshes. You may change the refresh interval by typing a new number in the text box and then clicking **Set Interval**.
Stop	Click **Stop** to halt system statistic polling.

30.3 VRRP Configuration

The following sections describe the different parts of the VRRP Configuration screen.

30.3.1 IP Interface Setup

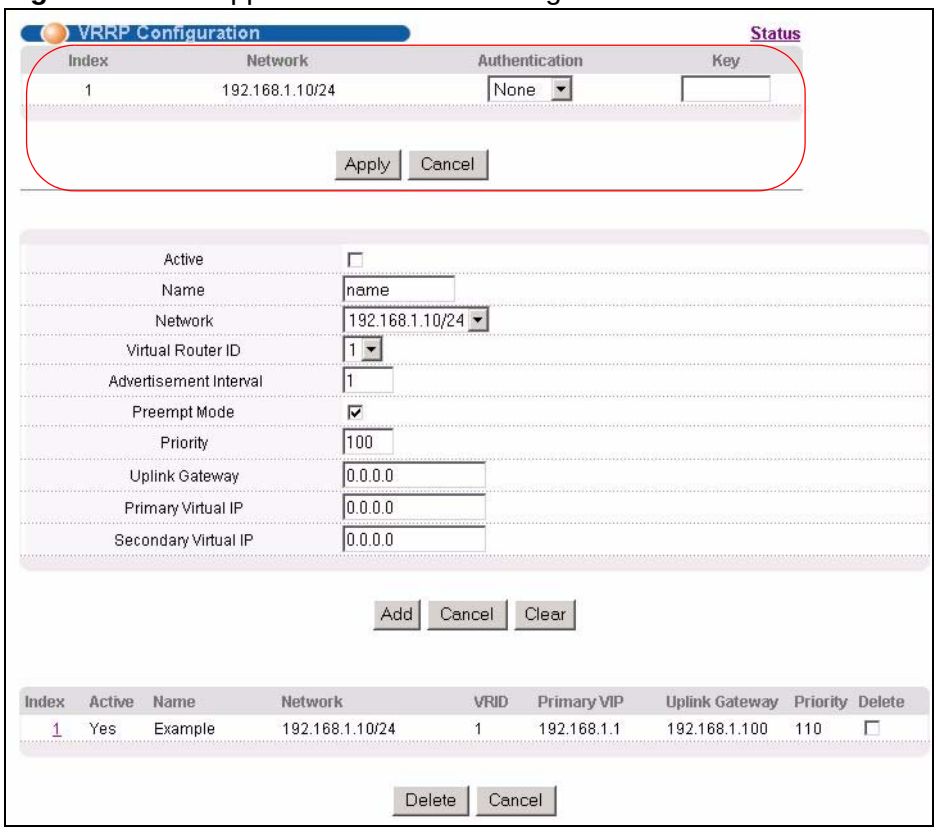
Before configuring VRRP, first create an IP interface (or routing domain) in the **IP Setup** screen (see the Section 7.6 on page 71 for more information).

Click **IP Application**, **VRRP** and click the **Configuration** link to display the **VRRP Configuration** screen as shown next.

Note: You can only configure VRRP on interfaces with unique VLAN IDs.

Note: Routing domains with the same VLAN ID are not displayed in the table indicated.

Figure 132 IP Application > VRRP Configuration > IP Interface



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 95 IP Application > VRRP Configuration > IP Interface

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Network	This field displays the IP address and number of subnet mask bit of an IP domain.
Authentication	Select **None** to disable authentication. This is the default setting. Select **Simple** to use a simple password to authenticate VRRP packet exchanges on this interface.
Key	When you select **Simple** in the **Authentication** field, enter a password key (up to eight printable ASCII character long) in this field.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to discard all changes made in this table.

30.3.2 VRRP Parameters

This section describes the VRRP parameters.

30.3.2.1 Advertisement Interval

The master router sends out Hello messages to let the other backup routers know that it is still up and running. The time interval between sending the Hello messages is the advertisement interval. By default, a Hello message is sent out every second.

If the backup routers do not receive a Hello message from the master router after this interval expires, it is assumed that the master router is down. Then the backup router with the highest priority becomes the master router.

Note: All routers participating in the virtual router must use the same advertisement interval.

30.3.2.2 Priority

Configure the priority level (1 to 254) to set which backup router to take over in case the master router goes down. The backup router with the highest priority will take over. The priority of the VRRP router that owns the IP address(es) associated with the virtual router is 255.

30.3.2.3 Preempt Mode

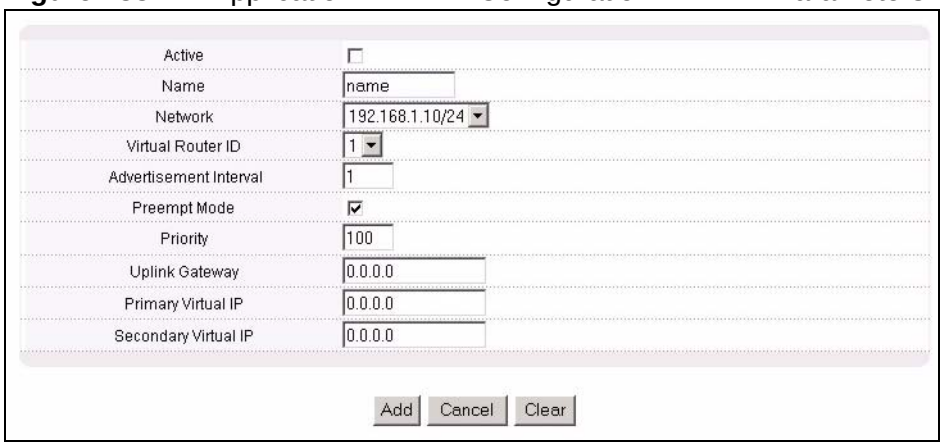
If the master router is unavailable, a backup router assumes the role of the master router. However, when another backup router with a higher priority joins the network, it will preempt the lower priority backup router that is the master. Disable preempt mode to prevent this from happening.

By default, a layer 3 device with the same IP address as the virtual router will become the master router regardless of the preempt mode.

30.3.3 Configuring VRRP Parameters

After you set up an IP interface, configure the VRRP parameters in the **VRRP Configuration** screen.

Figure 133 IP Application > VRRP Configuration > VRRP Parameters



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 96 IP Application > VRRP Configuration > VRRP Parameters

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this VRRP entry.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Network	Select an IP domain to which this VRRP entry applies.
Virtual Router ID	Select a virtual router number (1 to 7) for which this VRRP entry is created. You can configure up to seven virtual routers for one network.
Advertisement Interval	Specify the number of seconds between Hello message transmissions. The default is **1**.
Preempt Mode	Select this option to activate preempt mode.
Priority	Enter a number (between 1 and 254) to set the priority level. The bigger the number, the higher the priority. This field is **100** by default.
Uplink Gateway	Enter the IP address of the uplink gateway in dotted decimal notation. The Switch checks the link to the uplink gateway.
Primary Virtual IP	Enter the IP address of the primary virtual router in dotted decimal notation.
Secondary Virtual IP	This field is optional. Enter the IP address of a secondary virtual router in dotted decimal notation. This field is ignored when you enter **0.0.0.0**.

Table 96 IP Application > VRRP Configuration > VRRP Parameters (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to discard all changes made in this table.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

30.3.4 Configuring VRRP Parameters

View the VRRP configuration summary at the bottom of the screen.

Figure 134 VRRP Configuration: Summary

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 97 VRRP Configuring: VRRP Parameters

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of an entry.
Active	This field shows whether a VRRP entry is enabled (**Yes**) or disabled (**No**).
Name	This field displays a descriptive name of an entry.
Network	This field displays the IP address and subnet mask of an interface.
VRID	This field displays the ID number of a virtual router.
Primary VIP	This field displays the IP address of the primary virtual router.
Uplink Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the uplink gateway.
Priority	This field displays the priority level (1 to 255) of the entry.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

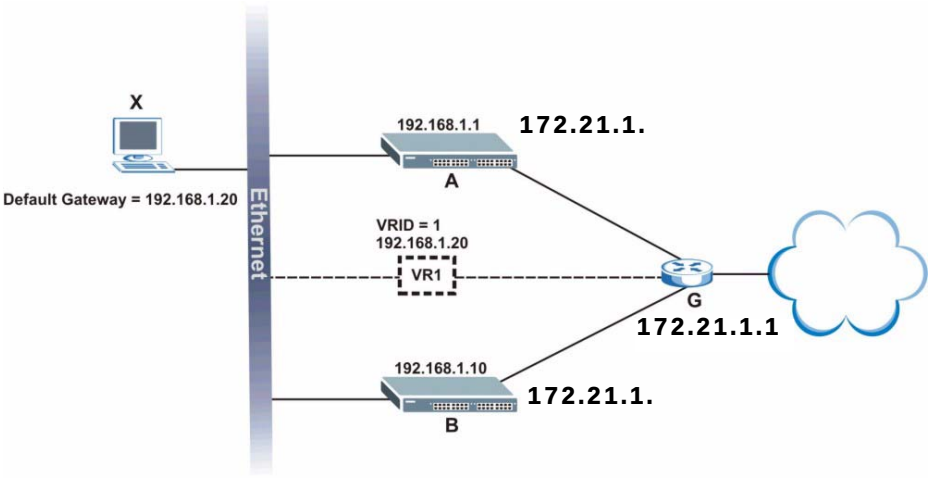
30.4 VRRP Configuration Examples

The following sections show two VRRP configuration examples on the Switch.

30.4.1 One Subnet Network Example

The figure below shows a simple VRRP network with only one virtual router **VR1** (VRID =1) and two switches. The network is connected to the WAN via an uplink gateway **G** (172.21.1.100). The host computer **X** is set to use **VR1** as the default gateway.

Figure 135 VRRP Configuration Example: One Virtual Router Network



You want to set switch **A** as the master router. Configure the VRRP parameters in the **VRRP Configuration** screens on the switches as shown in the figures below.

Figure 136 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch A

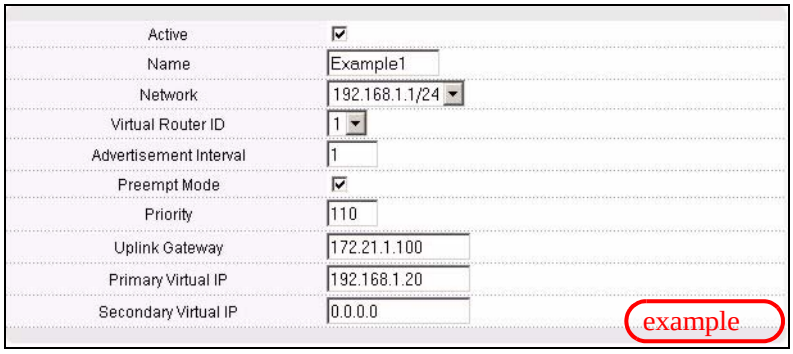
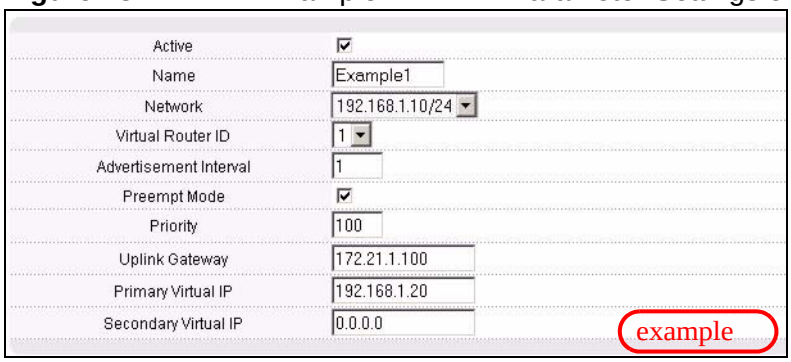


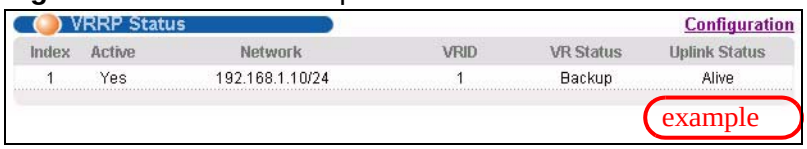
Figure 137 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Parameter Settings on Switch B



After configuring and saving the VRRP configuration, the **VRRP Status** screens for both switches are shown next.

Figure 138 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch A

Figure 139 VRRP Example 1: VRRP Status on Switch B

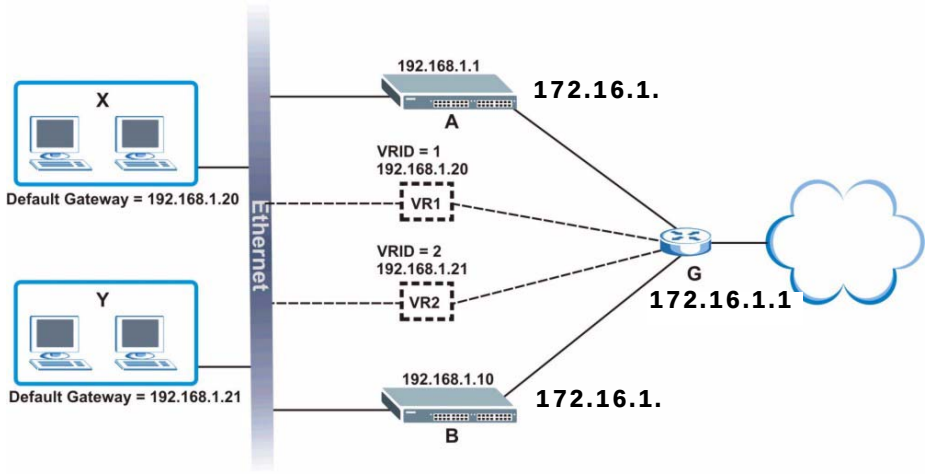


30.4.2 Two Subnets Example

The following figure depicts an example in which two switches share the network traffic. Hosts in the two network groups use different default gateways. Each switch is configured to backup a virtual router using VRRP.

You wish to configure switch **A** as the master router for virtual router **VR1** and as a backup for virtual router **VR2**. On the other hand, switch **B** is the master for **VR2** and a backup for **VR1**.

Figure 140 VRRP Configuration Example: Two Virtual Router Network



You need to configure the **VRRP Configuration** screen for virtual router VR2 on each switch, while keeping the VRRP configuration in example 1 for virtual router

VR1 (refer to Section 30.4.2 on page 267). Configure the VRRP parameters on the switches as shown in the figures below.

Figure 141 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch A

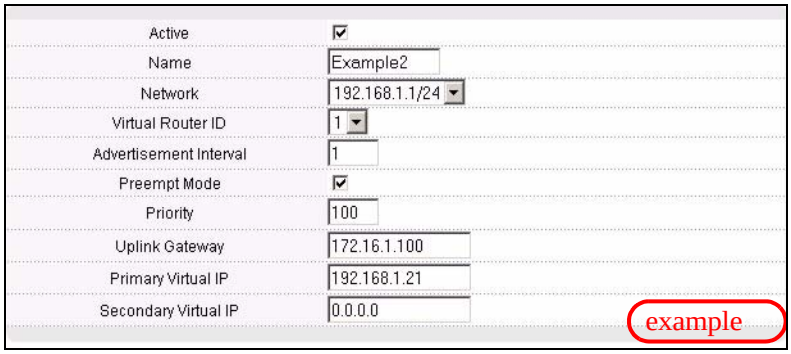
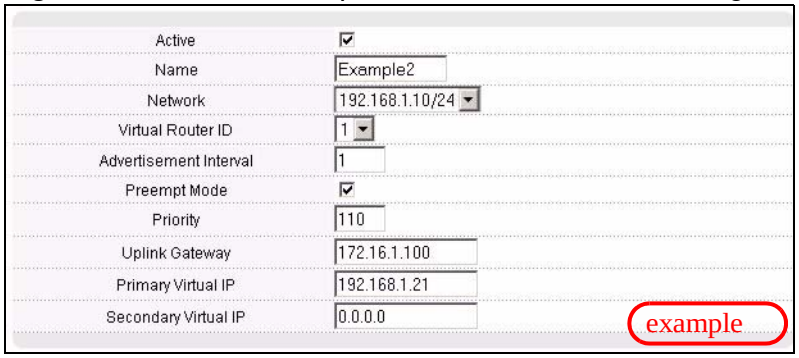


Figure 142 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Parameter Settings for VR2 on Switch B



After configuring and saving the VRRP configuration, the **VRRP Status** screens for both switches are shown next.

Figure 143 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch A

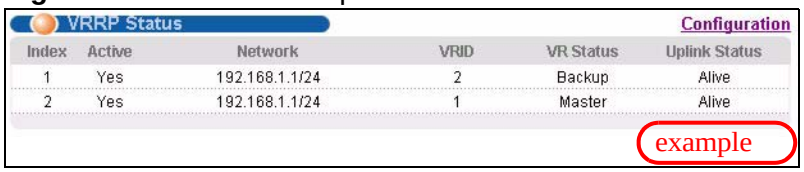
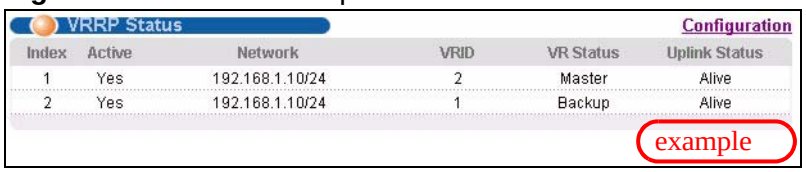

VRRP Status
Configuration
Index Active Network VRID VR Status Uplink Status
1 Yes 192.168.1.1/24 2 Backup Alive
2 Yes 192.168.1.1/24 1 Master Alive
example

Figure 144 VRRP Example 2: VRRP Status on Switch B


VRRP Status
Configuration
Index Active Network VRID VR Status Uplink Status
1 Yes 192.168.1.10/24 2 Master Alive
2 Yes 192.168.1.10/24 1 Backup Alive
example

PART V
Management

Maintenance (271)

Access Control (279)

Diagnostic (299)

Syslog (301)

Cluster Management (305)

MAC Table (313)

IP Table (317)

ARP Table (321)

Routing Table (323)

Configure Clone (325)

31

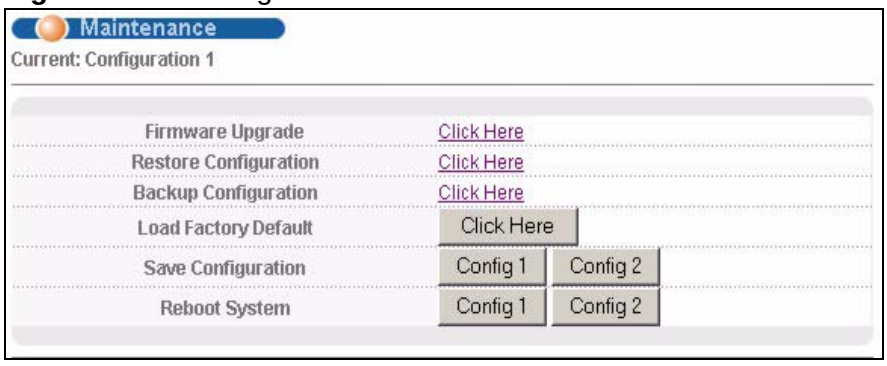
Maintenance

This chapter explains how to configure the maintenance screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

31.1 The Maintenance Screen

Use this screen to manage firmware and your configuration files. Click **Management** > **Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 145 Management > Maintenance



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 98 Management > Maintenance

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current	This field displays which configuration (**Configuration 1** or **Configuration 2**) is currently operating on the Switch.
Firmware Upgrade	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.
Restore Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Restore Configuration** screen.
Backup Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Table 98 Management > Maintenance (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Load Factory Default	Click **Click Here** to reset the configuration to the factory default settings.
Save Configuration	Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.
Reboot System	Click **Config 1** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 2** on the Switch. Note: Make sure to click the **Save** button in any screen to save your settings to the current configuration on the Switch.

31.2 Load Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Default** to clear all Switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.

2 Click **OK** to reset all Switch configurations to the factory defaults.

Figure 146 Load Factory Default: Start

3 In the web configurator, click the **Save** button to make the changes take effect. If you want to access the Switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

31.3 Save Configuration

Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings permanently to **Configuration 1** on the Switch.

Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.

Alternatively, click **Save** on the top right-hand corner in any screen to save the configuration changes to the current configuration.

Note: Clicking the **Apply** or **Add** button does NOT save the changes permanently. All unsaved changes are erased after you reboot the Switch.

31.4 Reboot System

Reboot System allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. It also allows you to load configuration one (**Config 1**) or configuration two (**Config 2**) when you reboot. Follow the steps below to reboot the Switch.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Config 1** button next to **Reboot System** to reboot and load configuration one. The following screen displays.

Figure 147 Reboot System: Confirmation

2 Click **OK** again and then wait for the Switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the Switch's configuration.

Click **Config 2** and follow steps 1 to 2 to reboot and load configuration two on the Switch.

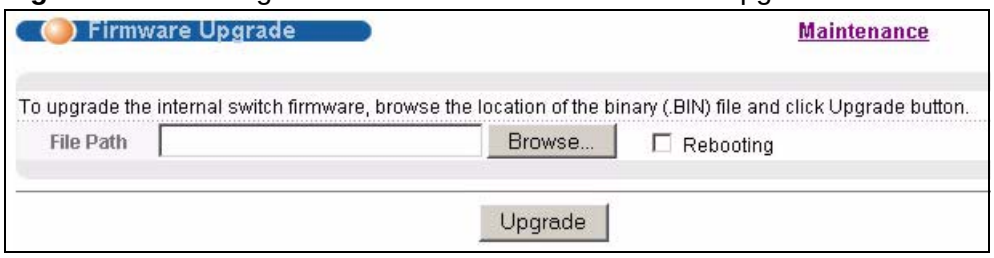
31.5 Firmware Upgrade

Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

From the **Maintenance** screen, display the **Firmware Upgrade** screen as shown next.

Figure 148 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade



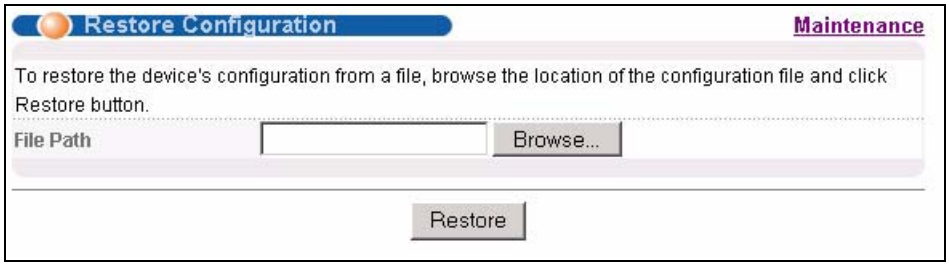
Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Select the **Rebooting** checkbox if you want to reboot the Switch and apply the new firmware immediately. (Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot). Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

31.6 Restore a Configuration File

Restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the Switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

Figure 149 Management > Maintenance > Restore Configuration


Restore Configuration
Maintenance
To restore the device's configuration from a file, browse the location of the configuration file and click Restore button.
File Path
Browse...
Restore

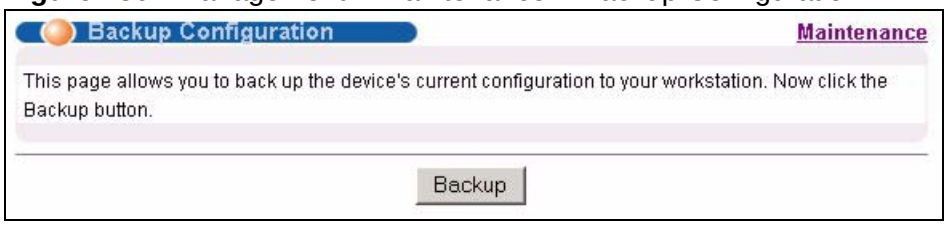
Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the Switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

31.7 Backup a Configuration File

Backing up your Switch configurations allows you to create various “snapshots” of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current Switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Figure 150 Management > Maintenance > Backup Configuration


Backup Configuration
Maintenance
This page allows you to back up the device's current configuration to your workstation. Now click the Backup button.
Backup

Follow the steps below to back up the current Switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

1 Click **Backup**.

2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.

3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

31.8 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the Switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

31.8.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (also known as the romfile or ROM) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, Switch setup, IP Setup, and so on. Once you have customized the Switch’s settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System, sometimes referred to as the “ras” file) is the system firmware and has a “bin” filename extension.

Table 99 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config	.cfg	This is the configuration (config) filename on the Switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your Switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the Switch.

31.8.1.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the Switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called “config.cfg” on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the Switch only recognizes “config” and “ras”. Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

31.8.2 FTP Command Line Procedure

1. Launch the FTP client on your computer.
2. Enter open, followed by a space and the IP address of your Switch.
3. Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
4. Enter your password as requested (the default is “1234”).
5. Enter bin to set transfer mode to binary.

6 Use put to transfer files from the computer to the Switch, for example, put firmware.bin ras transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the Switch and renames it to “ras”. Similarly, put config.cfg config transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.cfg) to the Switch and renames it to “config”. Likewise get config config.cfg transfers the configuration file on the Switch to your computer and renames it to “config.cfg”. See Table 99 on page 276 for more information on filename conventions.

7 Enter quit to exit the ftp prompt.

31.8.3 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

Table 100 General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

31.8.4 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Service Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Switch will disallow the FTP session.

32

Access Control

This chapter describes how to control access to the Switch.

32.1 Access Control Overview

A console port and FTP are allowed one session each, Telnet and SSH share nine sessions, up to five Web sessions (five different usernames and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions are allowed.

Table 101 Access Control Overview

Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	Share up to nine sessions		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist when multi-login is disabled. See the Command Reference guide for more information on disabling multi-login.

32.2 The Access Control Main Screen

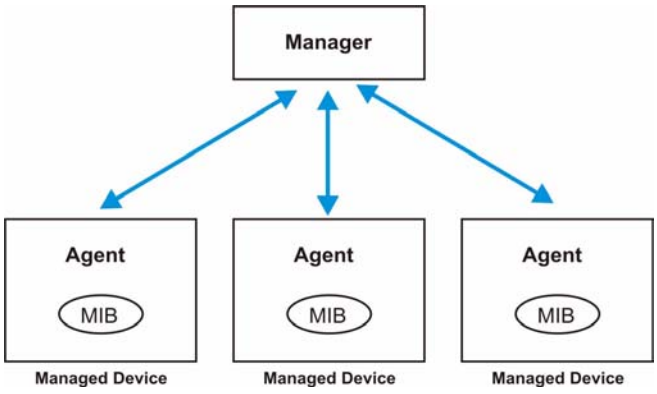
Click **Management > Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

Figure 151 Management > Access Control

32.3 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the Switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c or SNMP version 3. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 152 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed Switch (the Switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed Switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a Switch. Examples of variables include number of packets received, node port status and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

Table 102 SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

32.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.

32.3.2 Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The Switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

32.3.3 SNMP Traps

The Switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. The following tables outline the SNMP traps by category.

An OID (Object ID) that begins with "**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.**" is defined in private MIBs. Otherwise, it is a standard MIB OID.

Table 103 SNMP System Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
coldstart	coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Switch is turned on.
warmstart	warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the Switch restarts.
fanspeed	FanSpeedEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the fan speed goes above or below the normal operating range.
	FanSpeedEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the fan speed returns to the normal operating range.
temperature	TemperatureEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the temperature goes above or below the normal operating range.
	TemperatureEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the temperature returns to the normal operating range.
voltage	VoltageEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the voltage goes above or below the normal operating range.
	VoltageEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the voltage returns to the normal operating range.
reset	UncontrolledResetEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch automatically resets.
	ControlledResetEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch resets by an administrator through a management interface.
	RebootEvent	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.1.1.2	This trap is sent when the Switch reboots by an administrator through a management interface.
timesync	RTCNotUpdatedEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch fails to get the time and date from a time server.
	RTCNotUpdatedEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the Switch gets the time and date from a time server.

Table 103 SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
intrusionlock	IntrusionLockEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when intrusion lock occurs on a port.
loopguard	LoopguardEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when loopguard shuts down a port.

Table 104 SNMP InterfaceTraps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
linkup	linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
	LinkDownEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
linkdown	linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
	LinkDownEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
autonegotiation	AutonegotiationFailedEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface fails to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
	AutonegotiationFailedEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface auto-negotiates with the peer Ethernet interface.

Table 105 AAA Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authentication	authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	AuthenticationFailureEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS server.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the RADIUS server can be reached.

Table 105 AAA Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
accounting	RADIUSAcctNotReachableEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS accounting server.
	RADIUSAcctNotReachableEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when the RADIUS accounting server can be reached.

Table 106 SNMP IP Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
ping	pingProbeFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.1	This trap is sent when a single ping probe fails.
	pingTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.2	This trap is sent when a ping test (consisting of a series of ping probes) fails.
	pingTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.3	This trap is sent when a ping test is completed.
traceroute	traceRouteTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.2	This trap is sent when a traceroute test fails.
	traceRouteTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.3	This trap is sent when a traceroute test is completed.

Table 107 SNMP Switch Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
stp	STPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
	MSTPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.107.70.1	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
	STPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
	MSTPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.107.70.2	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
mactable	MacTableFullEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.1	This trap is sent when more than 99% of the MAC table is used.
	MacTableFullEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.53.37.2.2	This trap is sent when less than 95% of the MAC table is used.

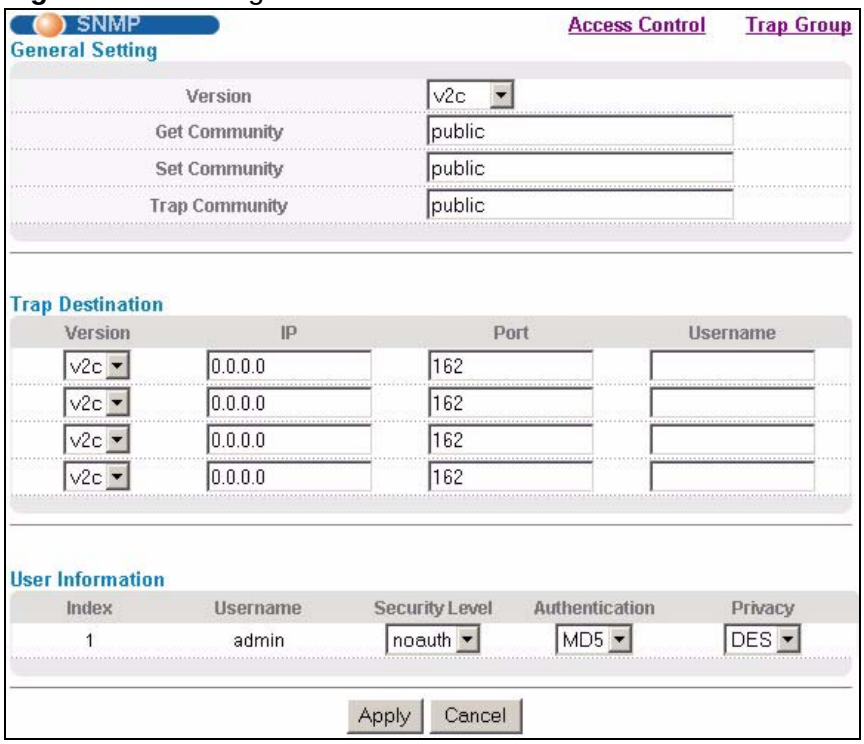
Table 107 SNMP Switch Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
rmon	RmonRisingAlarm	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.1.1.16.0.1	This trap is sent when a variable goes over the RMON "rising" threshold.
	RmonFallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.1.1.16.0.2	This trap is sent when the variable falls below the RMON "falling" threshold.

32.3.4 Configuring SNMP

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **SNMP** screen. You can click **Access Control** to go back to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 153 Management > Access Control > SNMP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 108 Management > Access Control > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setting	Use this section to specify the SNMP version and community (password) values.
Version	Select the SNMP version for the Switch. The SNMP version on the Switch must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 2c (**v2c**), SNMP version 3 (**v3**) or both (**v3v2c**). Note: SNMP version 2c is backwards compatible with SNMP version 1.
Get Community	Enter the **Get Community** string, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext- requests from the management station. The **Get Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Set Community	Enter the **Set Community**, which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station. The **Set Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Community	Enter the **Trap Community** string, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The **Trap Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Destination	Use this section to configure where to send SNMP traps from the Switch.
Version	Specify the version of the SNMP trap messages.
IP	Enter the IP addresses of up to four managers to send your SNMP traps to.
Port	Enter the port number upon which the manager listens for SNMP traps.
Username	Enter the username to be sent to the SNMP manager along with the SNMP v3 trap. Note: This username must match an existing account on the Switch (configured in **Management > Access Control > Logins** screen).
User Information	Use this section to configure users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3. Note: Use the username and password of the login accounts you specify in this section to create accounts on the SNMP v3 manager.
Index	This is a read-only number identifying a login account on the Switch.
Username	This field displays the username of a login account on the Switch.

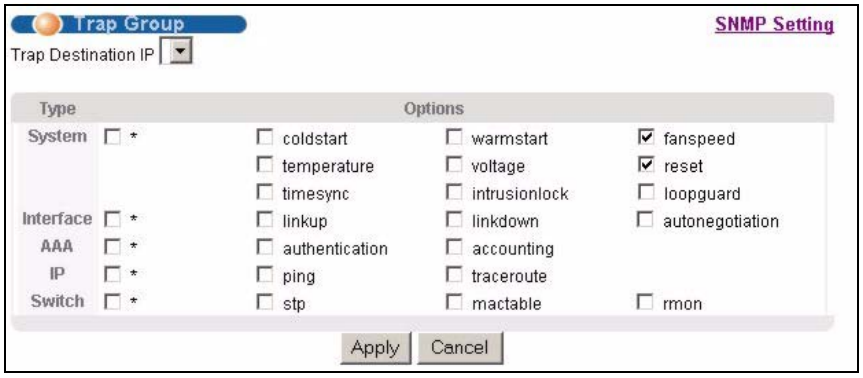
Table 108 Management > Access Control > SNMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication from this user. Choose: • **noauth** -to use the username as the password string to send to the SNMP manager. This is equivalent to the Get, Set and Trap Community in SNMP v2c. This is the lowest security level. • **auth** - to implement an authentication algorithm for SNMP messages sent by this user. • **priv** - to implement authentication and encryption for SNMP messages sent by this user. This is the highest security level. Note: The settings on the SNMP manager must be set at the same security level or higher than the security level settings on the Switch.
Authentication	Select an authentication algorithm. MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Privacy	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication from this user. You can choose one of the following: • **DES** - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. • **AES** - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group

From the **SNMP** screen, click **Trap Group** to view the screen as shown. Use the **Trap Group** screen to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.

Figure 154 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 109 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trap Destination IP	Select one of your configured trap destination IP addresses. These are the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. You must first configure a trap destination IP address in the **SNMP Setting** screen. Use the rest of the screen to select which traps the Switch sends to that SNMP manager.
Type	Select the categories of SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP manager.
Options	Select the individual SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP station. See Section 32.3.3 on page 282 for individual trap descriptions. The traps are grouped by category. Selecting a category automatically selects all of the category's traps. Clear the check boxes for individual traps that you do not want the Switch to send to the SNMP station. Clearing a category's check box automatically clears all of the category's trap check boxes (the Switch only sends traps from selected categories).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.3.6 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

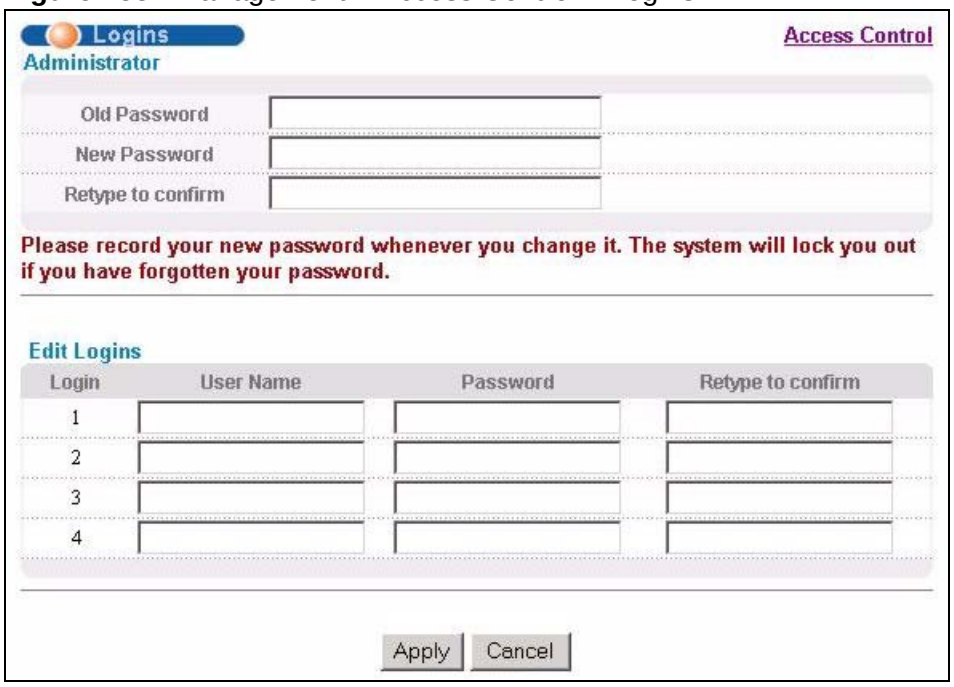
- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure Switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure Switch settings.

Click **Management > Access Control > Logins** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 155 Management > Access Control > Logins



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 110 Management > Access Control > Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator This is the default administrator account with the “admin” user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.	
Old Password	Type the existing system password (**1234** is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins You may configure passwords for up to four users. These users have read-only access. You can give users higher privileges via the CLI.	

Table 110 Management > Access Control > Logins (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 ASCII characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.4 SSH Overview

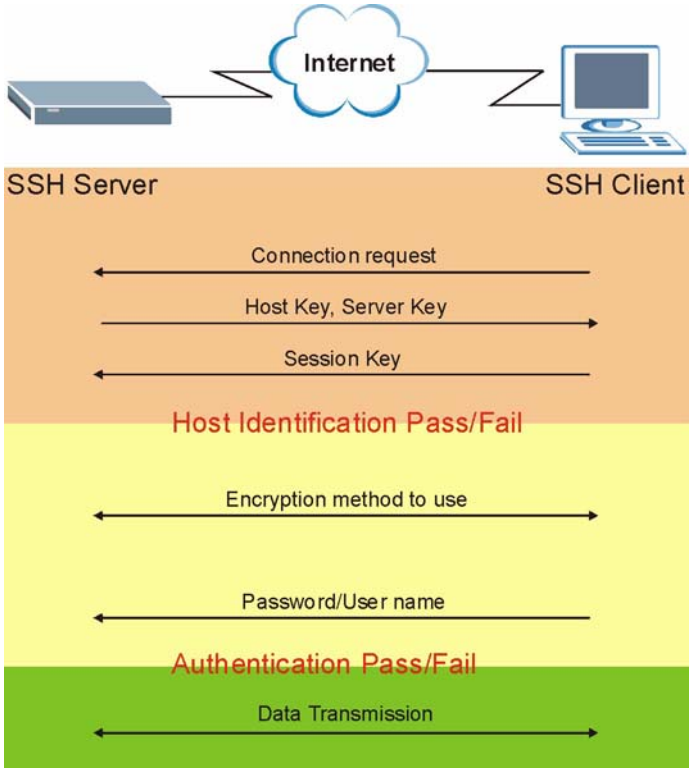
Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

Figure 156 SSH Communication Example

32.5 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

Figure 157 How SSH Works



1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

32.6 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your Switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

32.6.1 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Switch over SSH.

32.7 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

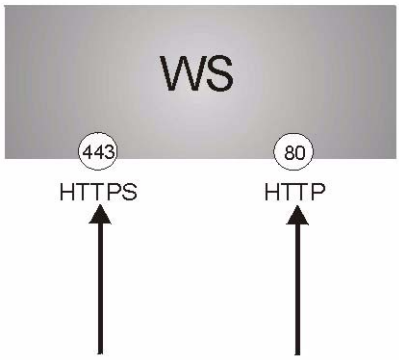
HTTPS on the Switch is used so that you may securely access the Switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the Switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the Switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a Certificate Authority (CA) that is a trusted CA on the Switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

Figure 158 HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **Service Access Control** screen, then the Switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

32.8 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Switch, then in your browser enter "https://Switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "Switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Switch you wish to access.

32.8.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **View Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the Switch.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

Figure 159 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer)

Security Alert
Information you exchange with this site cannot be viewed or changed by others. However, there is a problem with the site's security certificate.
The security certificate was issued by a company you have not chosen to trust. View the certificate to determine whether you want to trust the certifying authority.
The security certificate date is valid.
The name on the security certificate is invalid or does not match the name of the site
Do you want to proceed?
Yes
No
View Certificate

32.8.2 Netscape Navigator Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **Website Certified by an Unknown Authority** screen pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **Examine Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the Switch.

If **Accept this certificate temporarily for this session** is selected, then click **OK** to continue in Netscape.

Select **Accept this certificate permanently** to import the Switch's certificate into the SSL client.

Figure 160 Security Certificate 1 (Netscape)

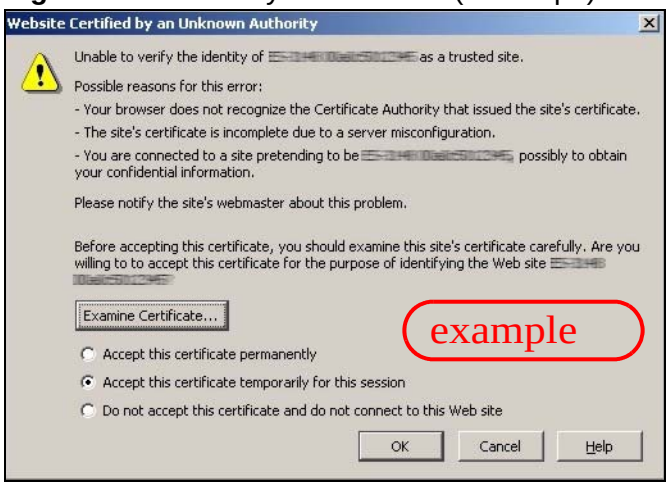
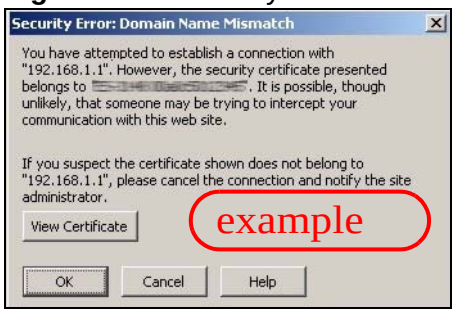

Website Certified by an Unknown Authority
Unable to verify the identity of as a trusted site.
Possible reasons for this error:
- Your browser does not recognize the Certificate Authority that issued the site's certificate.
- The site's certificate is incomplete due to a server misconfiguration.
- You are connected to a site pretending to be possibly to obtain your confidential information.
Please notify the site's webmaster about this problem.
Before accepting this certificate, you should examine this site's certificate carefully. Are you willing to to accept this certificate for the purpose of identifying the Web site
Examine Certificate...
example
Accept this certificate permanently
Accept this certificate temporarily for this session
Do not accept this certificate and do not connect to this Web site
OK
Cancel
Help

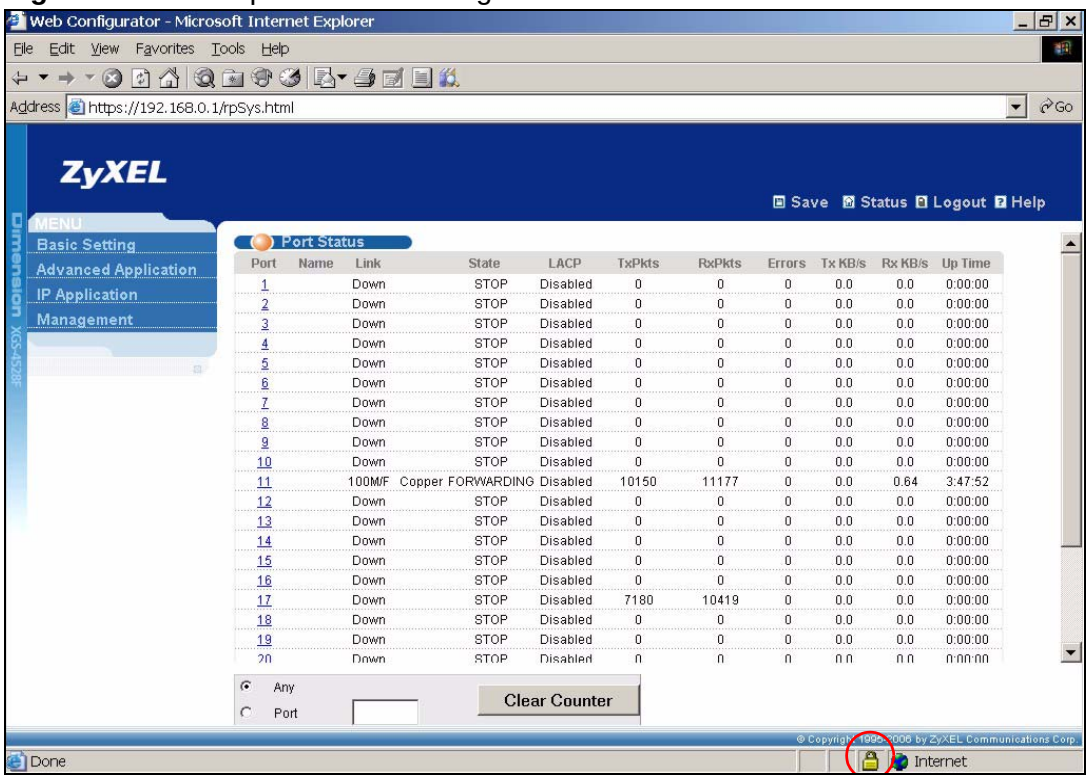
Figure 161 Security Certificate 2 (Netscape)


Security Error: Domain Name Mismatch
You have attempted to establish a connection with "192.168.1.1". However, the security certificate presented belongs to . It is possible, though unlikely, that someone may be trying to intercept your communication with this web site.
If you suspect the certificate shown does not belong to "192.168.1.1", please cancel the connection and notify the site administrator.
View Certificate
example
OK
Cancel
Help

32.8.3 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the Switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar denotes a secure connection.

Figure 162 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection

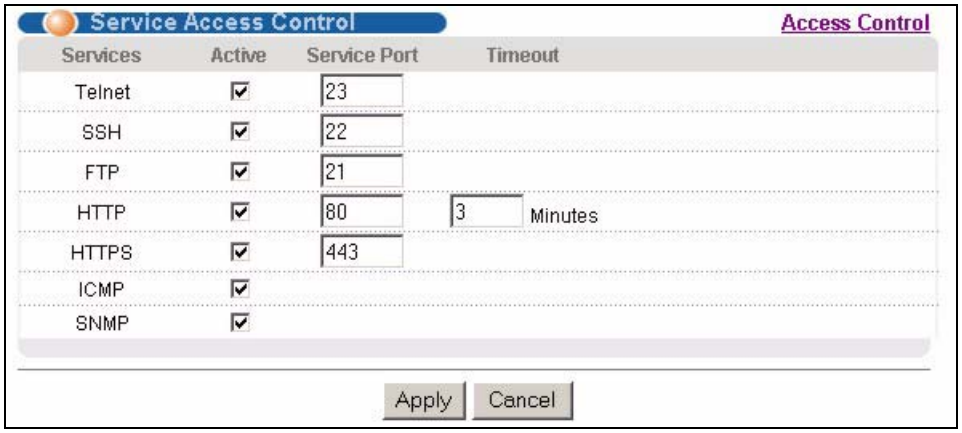

Web Configurator - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Address https://192.168.0.1/rpSys.html
Go
ZyXEL
Save Status Logout Help
MENU
Basic Setting
Advanced Application
IP Application
Management
Port Status
Port Name Link State LACP TxPkts RxPkts Errors Tx KB/s Rx KB/s Up Time
1 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
2 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
3 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
4 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
5 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
6 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
7 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
8 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
9 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
10 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
11 100M/F Copper FORWARDING Disabled 10150 11177 0 0.0 0.64 3:47:52
12 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
13 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
14 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
15 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
16 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
17 Down STOP Disabled 7180 10419 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
18 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
19 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
Any
Port
Clear Counter
Done
Internet

32.9 Service Port Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the Switch. You may also change the default service port and configure “trusted

computer(s)" for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Access Control** to go back to the main **Access Control** screen.

Figure 163 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 111 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

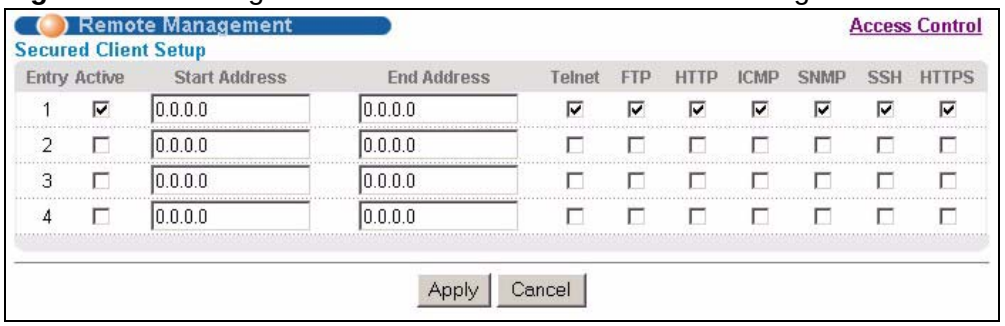
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the Switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the Switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the **Server Port** field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes a management session (via the web configurator) can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

32.10 Remote Management

From the **Access Control** screen, display the **Remote Management** screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 164 Management > Access Control > Remote Management



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 112 Management > Access Control > Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A “client set” is a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this Switch. The Switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The Switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/ HTTP/ICMP/ SNMP/SSH/ HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the Switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33

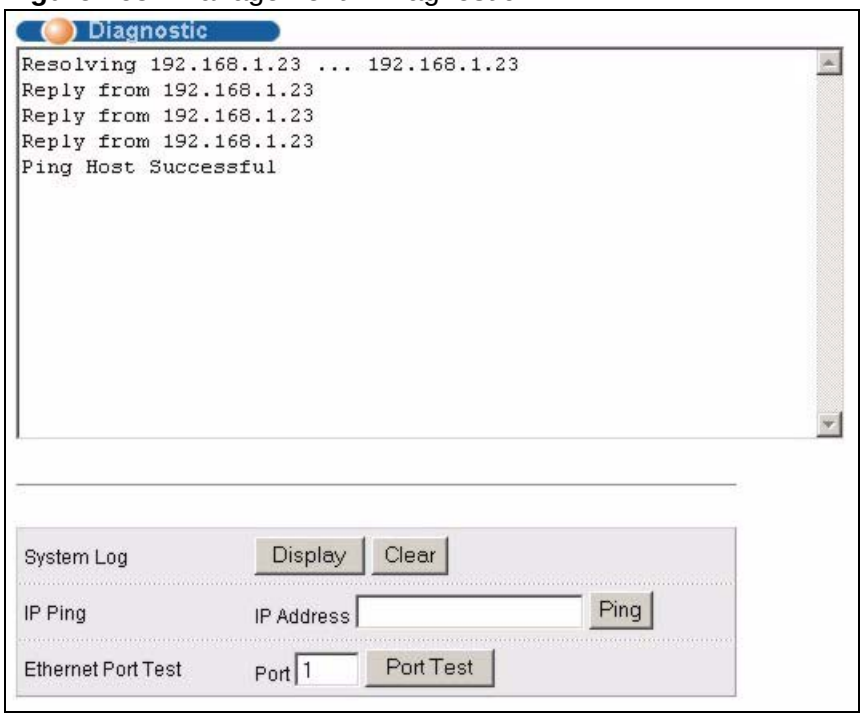
Diagnostic

This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen.

33.1 Diagnostic

Click **Management** > **Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

Figure 165 Management > Diagnostic



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 113 Management > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click **Display** to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click **Clear** to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
IP Ping	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click **Ping** to have the Switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	Enter a port number and click **Port Test** to perform an internal loopback test.

34

Syslog

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

34.1 Syslog Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

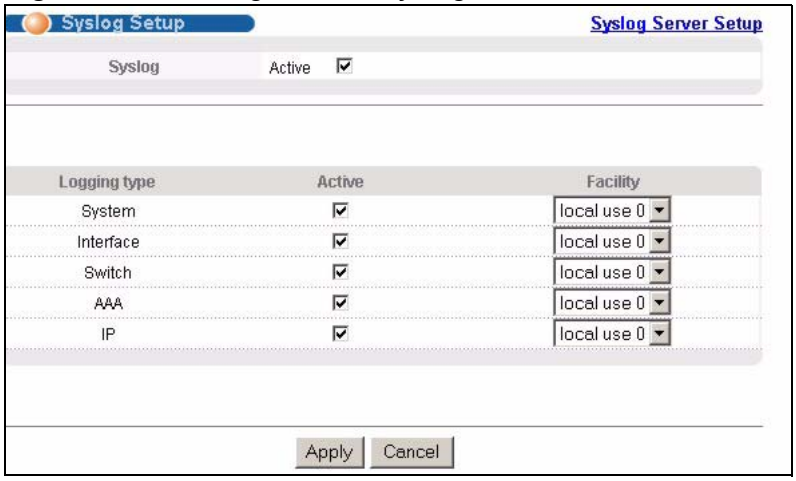
Table 114 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

34.2 Syslog Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server. Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

Figure 166 Management > Syslog



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

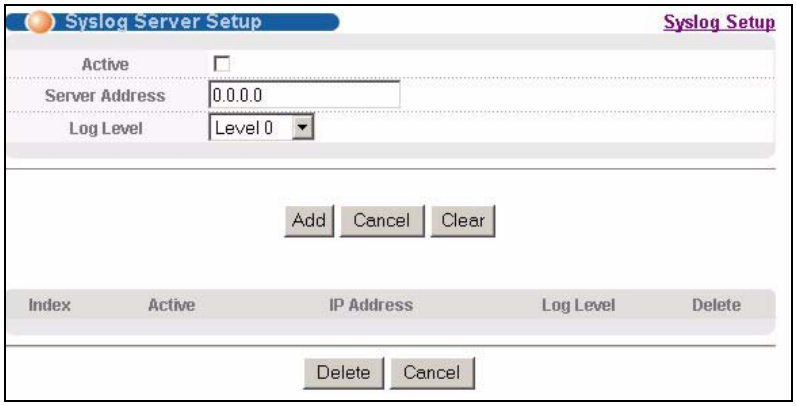
Table 115 Management > Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select **Active** to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

34.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** > **Syslog Server Setup** to open the following screen. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

Figure 167 Management > Syslog > Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 116 Management > Syslog > Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. **No** displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's **Delete** check box and click **Delete** to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

35

Cluster Management

This chapter introduces cluster management.

35.1 Clustering Management Status Overview

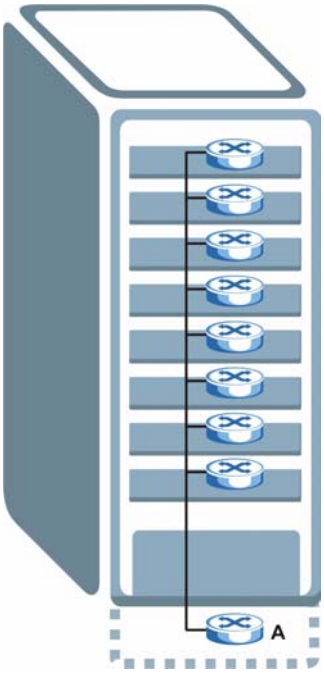
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one Switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 117 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Cluster member models must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The cluster manager is the Switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	Cluster members are the switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

Figure 168 Clustering Application Example

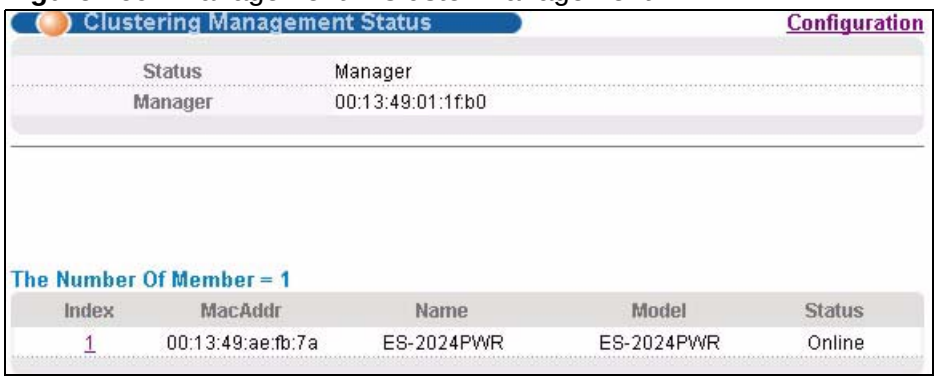


35.2 Cluster Management Status

Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

Figure 169 Management > Cluster Management



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 118 Management > Cluster Management

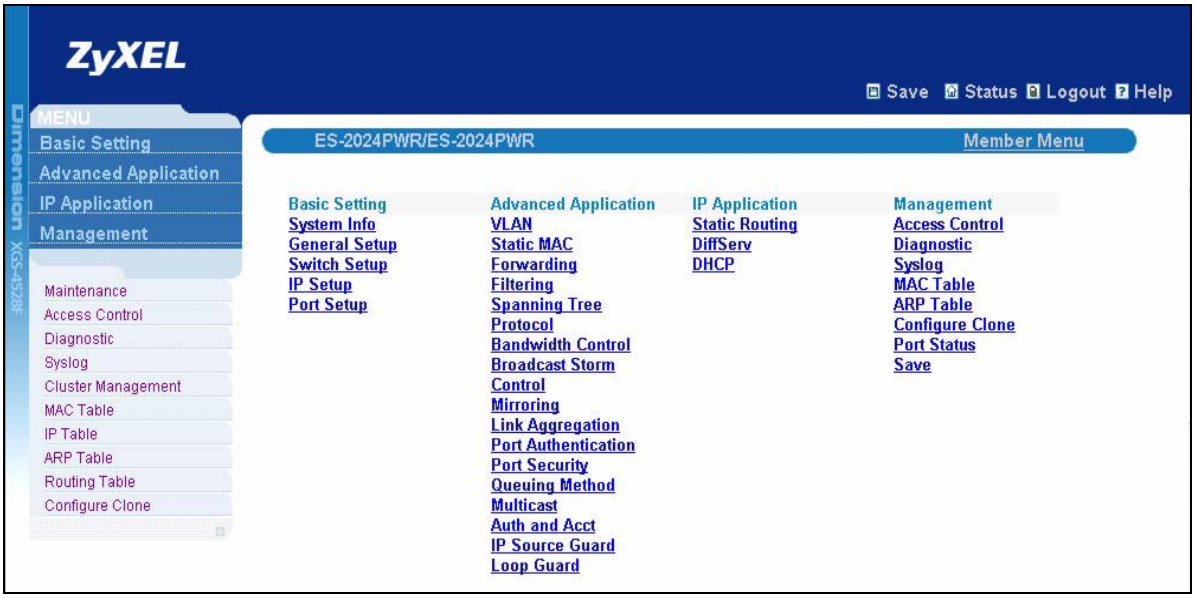
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the role of this Switch within the cluster. **Manager** **Member** (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) **None** (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the **Index** column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see Figure 170 on page 308).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: **Online** (the cluster member switch is accessible) **Error** (for example, the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) **Offline** (the switch is disconnected - **Offline** shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)

35.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web

configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

Figure 170 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



35.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

Figure 171 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 Switch FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:58:46 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group         3042210 Jul 01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group          393216 Jul 01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File sent OK
ftp: 297 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 297000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 370lt0.bin fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

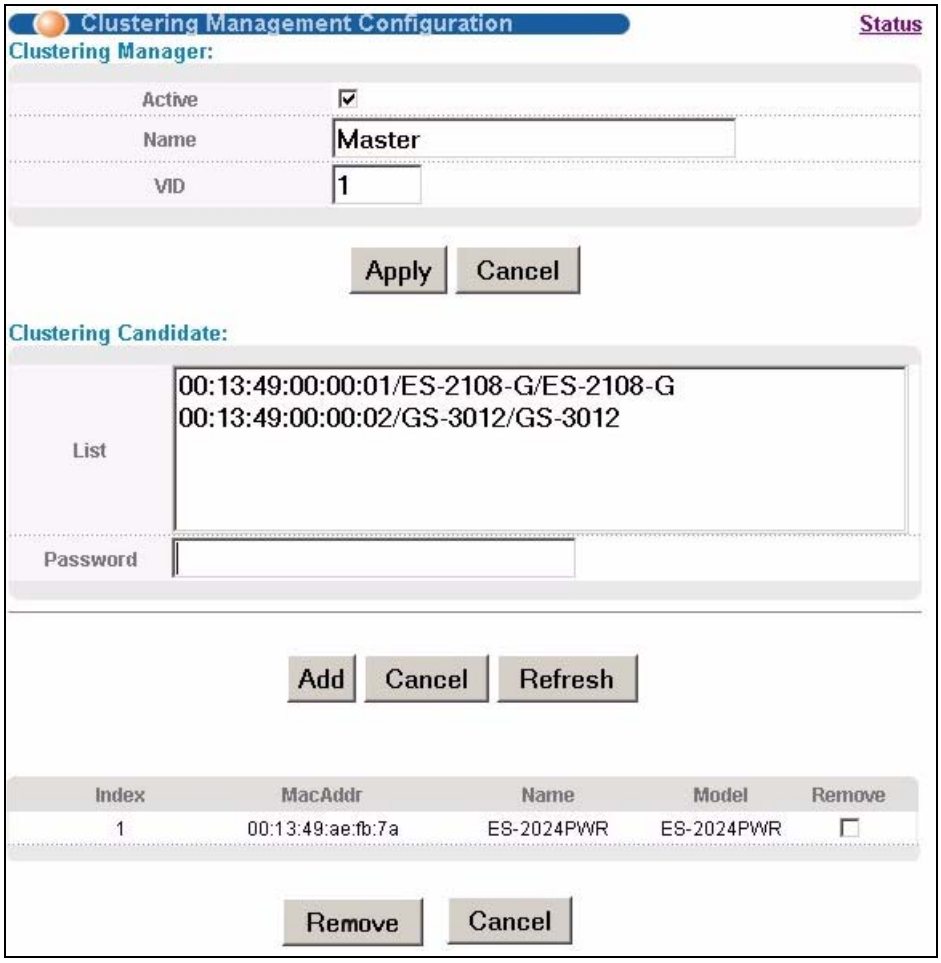
Table 119 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User	Enter “admin”.
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch’s firmware and configuration file.
370lt0.bin	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch’s firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch’s configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.

35.3 Clustering Management Configuration

Use this screen to configure clustering management. Click **Configuration** from the **Cluster Management** screen to display the next screen.

Figure 172 Management > Clustering Management > Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 120 Management > Clustering Management > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select **Active** to have this Switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the **Clustering Manager.** You may use up to 32 printable characters (spaces are allowed).

Table 120 Management > Clustering Management > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the Switch is set to **802.1Q** VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. This field is ignored if the **Clustering Manager** is using **Port-based** VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the **Clustering Candidate** list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the **Cluster Manager**. Its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below. If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Refresh	Click **Refresh** to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the **Remove** button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36

MAC Table

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

36.1 MAC Table Overview

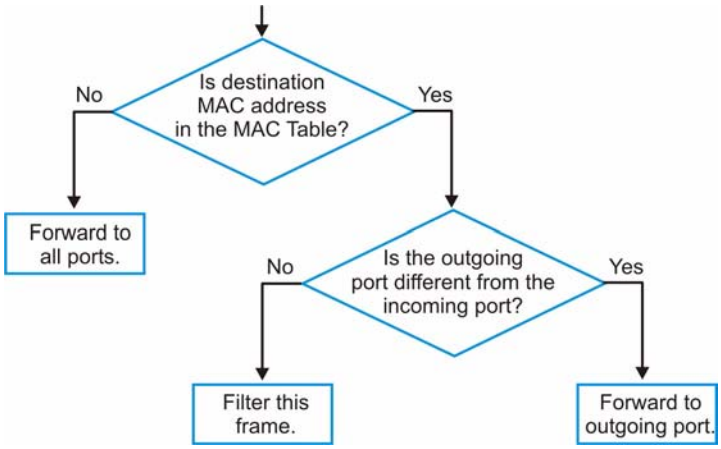
The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. When a device (which may belong to a VLAN group) sends a packet which is forwarded to a port on the Switch, the MAC address of the device is shown on the Switch's **MAC Table**. It also shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

The Switch uses the **MAC Table** to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

1. The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port from which this source MAC address came.
2. The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the **MAC Table**.
   - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
   - If the Switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.

- If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

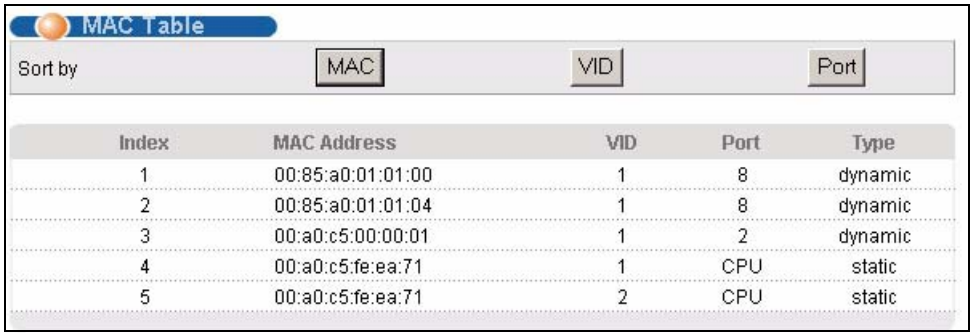
Figure 173 MAC Table Flowchart



36.2 Viewing the MAC Table

Click **Management** > **MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 174 Management > MAC Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 121 Management > MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sort by	Click one of the following buttons to display and arrange the data according to that button type. The information is then displayed in the summary table below.
MAC	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to MAC address.
VID	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.
Port	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.

Table 121 Management > MAC Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port from which the above MAC address was learned.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is **dynamic** (learned by the Switch) or **static** (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

37

IP Table

This chapter introduces the IP table.

37.1 IP Table Overview

The **IP Table** screen shows how packets are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. When a device (which may belong to a VLAN group) sends a packet which is forwarded to a port on the Switch, the IP address of the device is shown on the Switch's **IP Table**. The **IP Table** also shows whether the IP address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (belonging to the Switch).

The Switch uses the **IP Table** to determine how to forward packets. See the following figure.

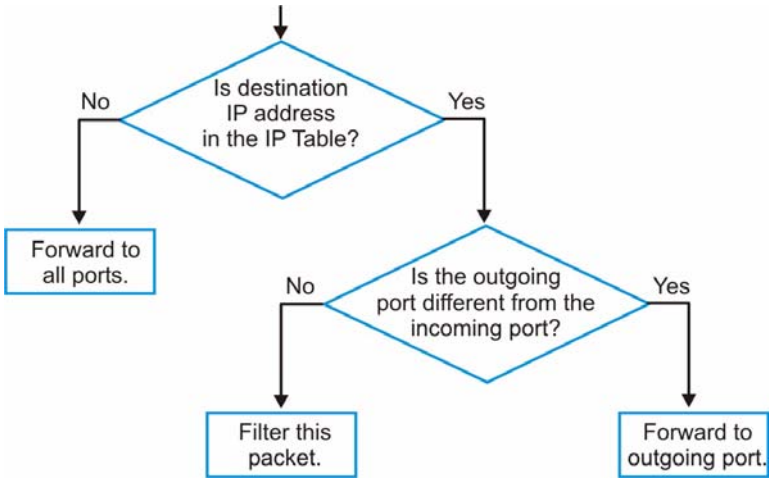
1 The Switch examines a received packet and learns the port from which this source IP address came.

2 The Switch checks to see if the packet's destination IP address matches a source IP address already learned in the **IP Table**.

- If the Switch has already learned the port for this IP address, then it forwards the packet to that port.
- If the Switch has not already learned the port for this IP address, then the packet is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.

- If the Switch has already learned the port for this IP address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the packet.

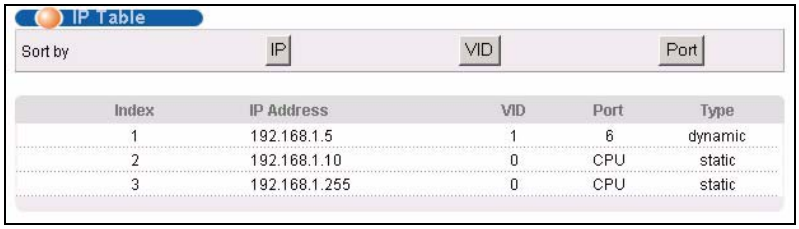
Figure 175 IP Table Flowchart



37.2 Viewing the IP Table

Click **Management** > **IP Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 176 Management > IP Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 122 Management > IP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Sort by	Click one of the following buttons to display and arrange the data according to that button type. The information is then displayed in the summary table below.
IP	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to IP address.
VID	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.
Port	Click this button to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Index	This field displays the index number.
IP Address	This is the IP address of the device from which the incoming packets came.

Table 122 Management > IP Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This is the VLAN group to which the packet belongs.
Port	This is the port from which the above IP address was learned. This field displays **CPU** to indicate the IP address belongs to the Switch.
Type	This shows whether the IP address is **dynamic** (learned by the Switch) or **static** (belonging to the Switch).

38

ARP Table

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

38.1 ARP Table Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

38.1.1 How ARP Works

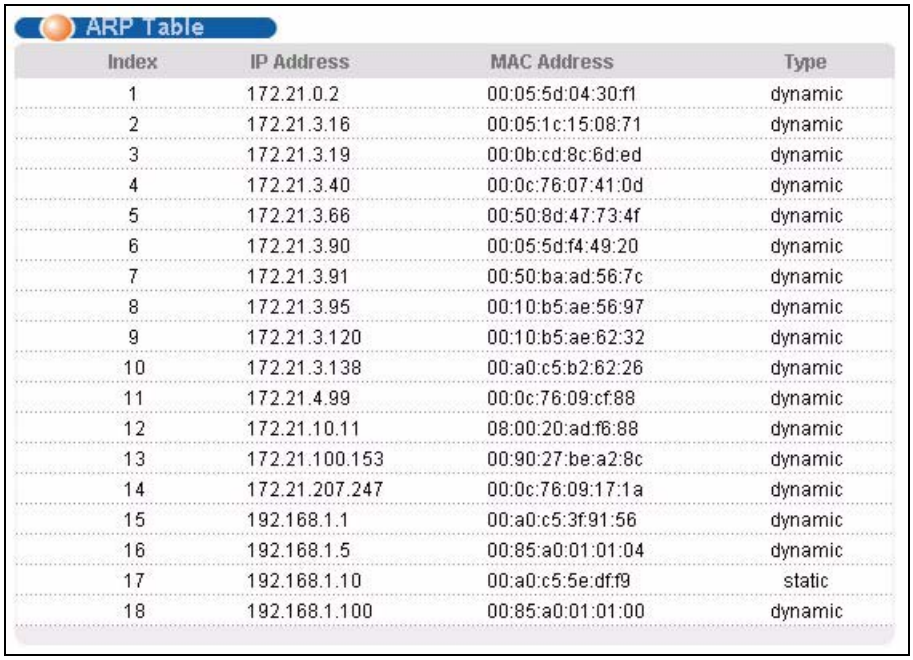
When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and if it finds the address, it sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

38.2 Viewing the ARP Table

Click **Management** > **ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen. Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s).

Figure 177 Management > ARP Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 123 Management > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the ARP Table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a Switch port with the corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the corresponding IP address above.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

39

Routing Table

This chapter introduces the routing table.

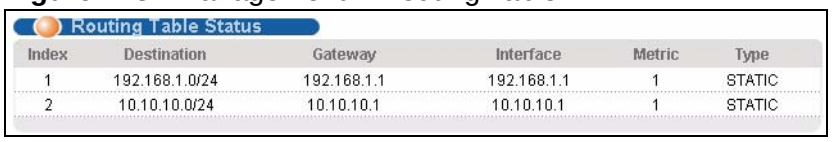
39.1 Overview

The routing table contains the route information to the network(s) that the Switch can reach. The Switch automatically updates the routing table with the RIP information received from other Ethernet devices.

39.2 Viewing the Routing Table Status

Use this screen to view routing table information. Click **Management** > **Routing Table** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 178 Management > Routing Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 124 Management > Routing Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number.
Destination	This field displays the destination IP routing domain.
Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the gateway device.
Interface	This field displays the IP address of the Interface.
Metric	This field displays the cost of the route.
Type	This field displays the method used to learn the route; **RIP** - learned from incoming RIP packets or **STATIC** - added as a static entry.

40

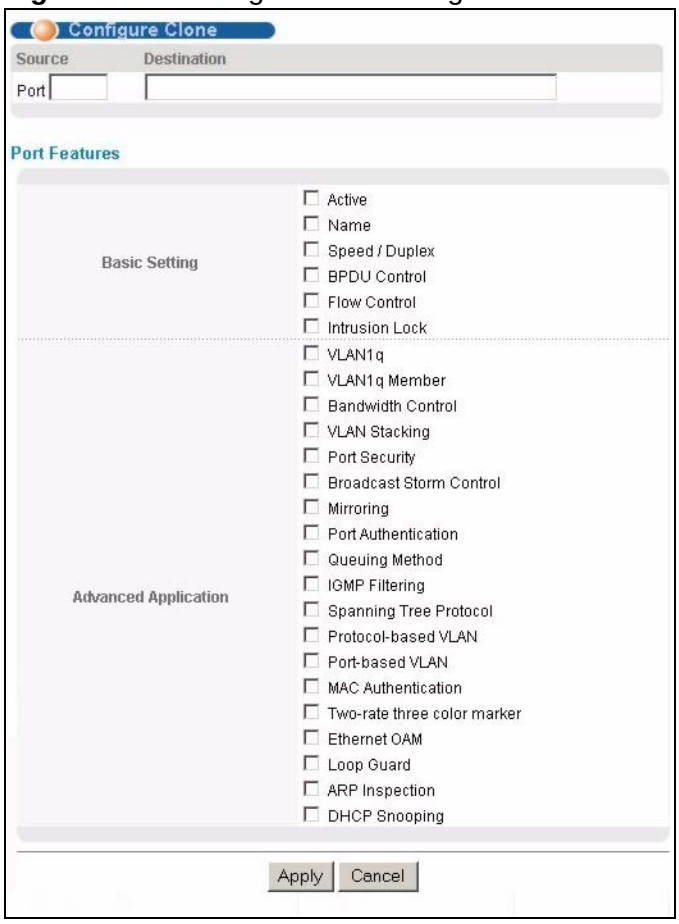
Configure Clone

This chapter shows you how you can copy the settings of one port onto other ports.

40.1 Configure Clone

Cloning allows you to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports. Click **Management** > **Configure Clone** to open the following screen.

Figure 179 Management > Configure Clone



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 125 Management > Configure Clone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source/ Destination Port	Enter the source port under the **Source** label. This port's attributes are copied. Enter the destination port or ports under the **Destination** label. These are the ports which are going to have the same attributes as the source port. You can enter individual ports separated by a comma or a range of ports by using a dash. Example: • **2, 4, 6** indicates that ports 2, 4 and 6 are the destination ports. • **2-6** indicates that ports 2 through 6 are the destination ports.
Basic Setting	Select which port settings (configured in the **Basic Setting** menus) should be copied to the destination port(s).
Advanced Application	Select which port settings (configured in the **Advanced Application** menus) should be copied to the destination ports.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART VI
Product Specifications

Product Specifications (329)

41

Product Specifications

The following tables summarize the Switch's hardware and firmware features.

Table 126 Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Dimensions	Standard 19" rack mountable 438 mm (W) x 310 mm (D) x 44.45 mm (H)
Weight	4.9 Kg
Power Specification	AC: 100 - 240 VAC 50/60 Hz 1.2 A max, 100 W internal universal power supply One Backup Power Supply (BPS) connector
Interfaces	• 44 100/1000 Mbps ports, compatible with Cat5/5e/6 copper cable. • 4 Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) Dual Personality interfaces. Each interface has: - a 100/1000 Mbps port, compatible with Cat5/5e/6 copper cable. - a mini-GBIC slot, compatible with Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) Multi Source Agreement (MSA) transceivers, to be used with 1000Base-X fiber cables. For each Dual Personality interface one port or slot is active at a time. • 2 mini-GBIC slots, compatible with Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) Multi Source Agreement (MSA) transceivers, to be used with 1000Base-X fiber cables. One local management Ethernet 10/100Base-T port One RS-232 console port
Ethernet Ports	Auto-negotiating: 100 Mbps in either half-duplex or full-duplex mode. 1000 Mbps in full duplex. Auto-crossover: Use either crossover or straight-through Ethernet cables. Auto-MDIX Compliant with IEEE 802.3ad/u/x Back pressure flow control for half duplex Flow control for full duplex (IEEE 802.3x)

Table 126 Hardware Specifications

LEDs	Main switch: BPS, PWR, SYS, ALM, Per Gigabit port: Green: 1000 Mbps Amber: 100 Mbps Per mini-GBIC port: LNK, ACT
Operating Environment	Temperature: 0º C ~ 45º C (32º F ~ 113º F) Humidity: 10 ~ 90% (non-condensing)
Storage Environment	Temperature: -10º C ~ 70º C (14º F ~ 158º F) Humidity: 10 ~ 90% (non-condensing)
Ground Wire Gauge	18 AWG or larger
Power Wire Gauge	18 AWG or larger
Approvals	Safety UL 60950-1, CSA 60950-1, EN 60950-1, IEC 60950-1 EMC FCC Part 15 (Class A), CE EMC (Class A)

Table 127 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
Default IP Address	In band: 192.168.1.1 Out of band (Management port): 192.168.0.1
Default Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
Administrator User Name	admin
Default Password	1234
Number of Login Accounts Configurable on the Switch	4 management accounts configured on the Switch. Authentication via RADIUS and TACACS+ also available.
IP Routing Domain	An IP interface (also known as an IP routing domain) is not bound to a physical port. Configure an IP routing domain to allow the Switch to route traffic between different networks.
VLAN	A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.
VLAN Stacking	Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames (“double-tagged” frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

Table 127 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address Filter	Filter traffic based on the source and/or destination MAC address and VLAN group (ID).
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)	Use this feature to have the Switch assign IP addresses, an IP default gateway and DNS servers to computers on your network.
IGMP Snooping	The Switch supports IGMP snooping enabling group multicast traffic to be only forwarded to ports that are members of that group; thus allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.
Differentiated Services (DiffServ)	With DiffServ, the Switch marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow.
Classifier and Policy	You can create a policy to define actions to be performed on a traffic flow grouped by a classifier according to specific criteria such as the IP address, port number or protocol type, etc.
Queuing	Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Three scheduling services are supported: Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ), Weighted Round Robin (WRR) and Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ). This allows the Switch to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.
Port Mirroring	Port mirroring allows you to copy traffic going from one or all ports to another or all ports in order that you can examine the traffic from the mirror port (the port you copy the traffic to) without interference.
Static Route	Static routes tell the Switch how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually.
Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR)	Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) using multicast traffic across a network. MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. This improves bandwidth utilization by reducing multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.
IP Multicast	With IP multicast, the Switch delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody. In addition, the Switch can send packets to Ethernet devices that are not VLAN-aware by untagging (removing the VLAN tags) IP multicast packets.
RIP	RIP (Routing Information Protocol) allows a routing device to exchange routing information with other routers.
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), defined in RFC 2338, allows you to create redundant backup gateways to ensure that the default gateway of a host is always available.

Table 127 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)	(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.
Loop Guard	Use the loop guard feature to protect against network loops on the edge of your network.
IP Source Guard	Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Link Aggregation	Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.
Port Authentication and Security	For security, the Switch allows authentication using IEEE 802.1x with an external RADIUS server and port security that allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch.
Authentication and Accounting	The Switch supports authentication and accounting services via RADIUS and TACACS+ AAA servers.
Device Management	Use the web configurator or commands to easily configure the rich range of features on the Switch.
Port Cloning	Use the port cloning feature to copy the settings you configure on one port to another port or ports.
Syslog	The Switch can generate syslog messages and send it to a syslog server.
Firmware Upgrade	Download new firmware (when available) from the ZyXEL web site and use the web configurator, CLI or an FTP/TFTP tool to put it on the Switch. Note: Only upload firmware for your specific model!
Configuration Backup & Restoration	Make a copy of the Switch's configuration and put it back on the Switch later if you decide you want to revert back to an earlier configuration.
Cluster Management	Cluster management (also known as iStacking) allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 128 Switching Specifications

Layer 2 Features	Bridging	8K MAC addresses Static MAC address filtering by source/destination Broadcast storm control Static MAC address forwarding
	Switching	Throughput: • 1488000 pps for 1000Base-T 64byte packet • 148800 pps for 100Base-TX, 64byte packet Switching fabric: 100 Gbps non-blocking Max. Frame size: 9 kbytes Forwarding frame: IEEE 802.3, IEEE 802.1q, Ethernet II, PPPoE Prevent the forwarding of corrupted packets
	STP	IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
	QoS	IEEE 802.1p Eight priority queues per port Port-based egress traffic shaping Rule-based traffic mirroring Supports IGMP snooping
	VLAN	Port-based VLAN setting Tag-based (IEEE 802.1Q) VLAN Number of VLAN: 4K, 1024 static maximum Supports GVRP Double tagging for VLAN stacking Protocol Based VLAN Subnet Based VLAN
	Port Aggregation	Supports IEEE 802.3ad; static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking Six groups (up to 8 ports each)
	Port mirroring	All ports support port mirroring Support port mirroring per IP/TCP/UDP
	Bandwidth control	Supports rate limiting at 64K increment

Table 128 Switching Specifications (continued)

Layer 3 Features	IP Capability	IPV4 support 64 IP routing domains 256 IP address table Wire speed IP forwarding
	Routing protocols	RIP-V1/V2 Static Routing VRRP
	IP services	DHCP relay; VLAN based DHCP server/relay DHCP Snooping
Security		IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication Static MAC address filtering Limiting number of dynamic addresses per port

The following list, which is not exhaustive, illustrates the standards supported in the Switch.

Table 129 Standards Supported

STANDARD	DESCRIPTION
RFC 826	Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
RFC 867	Daytime Protocol
RFC 868	Time Protocol
RFC 894	Ethernet II Encapsulation
RFC 1058	RIP-1 (Routing Information Protocol)
RFC 1112	IGMP v1
RFC 1155	SMI
RFC 1157	SNMPv1: Simple Network Management Protocol version 1
RFC 1213	SNMP MIB II
RFC 1305	Network Time Protocol (NTP version 3)
RFC 1441	SNMPv2 Simple Network Management Protocol version 2
RFC 1493	Bridge MIBs
RFC 1643	Ethernet MIBs
RFC 1723	RIP-2 (Routing Information Protocol)
RFC 1757	RMON
RFC 1901	SNMPv2c Simple Network Management Protocol version 2c
RFC 2131, RFC 2132	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)
RFC 2138	RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service)
RFC 2139	RADIUS Accounting
RFC 2236	Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2.
RFC 2338	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)

Table 129 Standards Supported (continued)

STANDARD	DESCRIPTION
RFC 2698	Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM)
RFC 2865	RADIUS - Vendor Specific Attribute
RFC 2674	P-BRIDGE-MIB, Q-BRIDGE-MIB
RFC 3046	DHCP Relay
RFC 3164	Syslog
RFC 3376	Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 3
RFC 3414	User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP v3)
RFC 3580	RADIUS - Tunnel Protocol Attribute
IEEE 802.1x	Port Based Network Access Control
IEEE 802.1D	MAC Bridges
IEEE 802.1p	Traffic Types - Packet Priority
IEEE 802.1Q	Tagged VLAN
IEEE 802.1w	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)
IEEE 802.1s	Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)
IEEE 802.3	Packet Format
IEEE 802.3ad	Link Aggregation
IEEE 802.3ah	Ethernet OAM (Operations, Administration and Maintenance)
IEEE 802.3x	Flow Control
IEEE 802.3z	1000BASE-X For optical fiber link 1000BASE-SX/LX.

PART VII
Appendices and Index

Legal Information (339)

Index (343)

A

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2009 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.

- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

FCC Warning

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Mark Warning:

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:

警告使用者
這是甲類的資訊產品, 在居住的環境使用時,
可能造成射頻干擾, 在這種情況下,
使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策.

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASS 1

PRODUCT COMPLIES WITH 21 CFR 1040.10 AND 1040.11.

PRODUIT CONFORME SELON 21 CFR 1040.10 ET 1040.11.

Viewing Certifications

1 Go to http://www.zyxel.com.

2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.

3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Index

Numerics

802.1P priority 75

A

access control
  limitations 279
  login account 288
  remote management 297
  service port 296
  SNMP 280
accounting
  setup 197
address learning, MAC 89, 92
Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) 321, 325, 326
administrator password 289
age 117
aggregator ID 134, 135
aging time 69
applications
  bridging 23
  IEEE 802.1Q VLAN 25
  switched workgroup 24
ARP
  how it works 321
  viewing 322
ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) 321
ARP inspection 205, 208
  and MAC filter 208
  configuring 209
  syslog messages 209
  trusted ports 209
authentication
  and RADIUS 192
  setup 197
authorization
  privilege levels 199
automatic VLAN registration 80

B

back up, configuration file 275
bandwidth control 333
basic settings 63
binding 205
binding table 205
  building 205
BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) 106
Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) 106
bridging 333

C

certifications 339
  notices 340
  viewing 341
CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) 79
changing the password 47
CIST 109
CIST (Common and Internal Spanning Tree) 107
Class of Service (CoS) 241
classifier 149, 152
  and QoS 149
  editing 152
  example 155
  overview 149
  setup 149, 152
  viewing 152
cloning a port See port cloning
cluster management 305
  and switch passwords 311
  cluster manager 305, 310
  cluster member 305, 311
  cluster member firmware upgrade 309
  network example 306
  setup 310
  specification 305
  status 306

switch models 305
VID 311
web configurator 307
cluster manager 305
cluster member 305
command interface 26
Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) 107
Common and Internal Spanning Tree, See CIST 109
configuration 238
change running config 273
configuration file 49
backup 275
restore 49, 274
saving 273
configuration, saving 48
console port
settings 37
copying port settings, See port cloning
copyright 339
CPU management port 95
current date 67
current time 67

D

daylight saving time 67
default gateway 256
DHCP 249
client IP pool 256
configuration options 249
modes 249
relay agent 249
relay example 257
server 249
setup 255
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) 249
DHCP relay option 82 207
DHCP snooping 205, 206
configuring 207
DHCP relay option 82 207
trusted ports 206
untrusted ports 206
DHCP snooping database 206
diagnostics 299
Ethernet port test 300
ping 300
system log 300
Differentiated Service (DiffServ) 241
DiffServ 241
activate 244
and TRTCM 246
DS field 241
DSCP 241
DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping 247
network example 242
PHB 241
dimensions 329
disclaimer 339
double-tagged frames 169
DS (Differentiated Services) 241
DSCP
DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping 247
service level 241
what it does 241
DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) 241
dynamic link aggregation 131

E

egress port 98
Ethernet broadcast address 321
Ethernet port test 300
Ethernet ports 34
default settings 34
external authentication server 192

F

fan speed 65
FCC interference statement 339
feature summary 44
file transfer using FTP
command example 276
filename convention, configuration
configuration

file names 275
filtering 103
rules 103
filtering database, MAC table 313
firmware 64
upgrade 273, 309
flow control 74
back pressure 74
IEEE802.3x 74
forwarding
delay 117
frames
tagged 88
untagged 88
front panel 33
FTP 26, 275
file transfer procedure 276
restrictions over WAN 277

G

GARP 80
GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) 80
GARP terminology 80
GARP timer 69, 80
general features 333
general setup 66
getting help 50
GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) 67
GVRP 80, 87, 88
and port assignment 88
GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) 80

H

hardware installation 29
mounting 30
hardware monitor 64
hardware overview 33
hello time 117
hops 117
HTTPS 292
certificates 292
implementation 292
public keys, private keys 292
HTTPS example 293
humidity 330

I

IEEE 802.1p, priority 70
IEEE 802.1x
activate 142, 143, 195, 197
reauthentication 143
IEEE 802.1x, port authentication 139
IGMP
version 175
IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) 175
IGMP filtering 175
profile 181
profiles 178
IGMP snooping 176
MVR 183
ingress port 98
Installation
Rack-mounting 30
installation
freestanding 29
precautions 30
introduction 23
IP
capability 334
interface 71, 261
routing domain 71
services 334
setup 71
IP source guard 205
ARP inspection 205, 208
DHCP snooping 205, 206
static bindings 205
IP table 317
how it works 317

L

LACP
  system priority 136
  timeout 136
layer 2 features 333
layer 3 features 334
LEDs 38
limit MAC address learning 147
link aggregation 131
  dynamic 131
  ID information 132
  setup 134, 135
  status 133
lockout 48
log 300
login 41
  password 47
login account
  Administrator 289
  non-administrator 289
login accounts 288
  configuring via web configurator 288
  multiple 288
  number of 288
login password 289
loop guard 231
  how it works 232
  port shut down 233
  probe packet 232
loop guard, vs STP 231

M

MAC (Media Access Control) 64
MAC address 64, 321
  maximum number per port 147
MAC address learning 69, 89, 92, 99, 147
  specify limit 147
MAC authentication 140
  aging time 144
MAC filter
  and ARP inspection 208
MAC table 313
  how it works 313
  viewing 314
maintenance 271
  configuration backup 275
  current configuration 271
  firmware 273
  main screen 271
  restoring configuration 274
Management Information Base (MIB) 280
management port 98
managing the device
  good habits 26
  using FTP. See FTP.
  using SNMP. See SNMP.
  using Telnet. See command interface.
  using the command interface. See command interface.
  using the web configurator. See web configurator.
man-in-the-middle attacks 208
max
  age 117
  hops 117
MIB
  and SNMP 280
  supported MIBs 281
MIB (Management Information Base) 280
mini GBIC ports 34
  connection speed 35
  connector type 35
  transceiver installation 35
  transceiver removal 35
mirroring ports 129
model name 64
monitor port 129, 130
mounting brackets 30
MSA (MultiSource Agreement) 34
MST Instance, See MSTI 109
MST region 108
MSTI 109
  MST ID 109
MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) 107
MSTP 105, 107
  bridge ID 120
  configuration 116
  configuration digest 120
  forwarding delay 117
  Hello Time 120

hello time 117
Max Age 120
max age 117
max hops 117
MST region 108
network example 107
path cost 118
port priority 118
revision level 117
MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol) 105
MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) 68
multicast 175
802.1 priority 178
and IGMP 175
IP addresses 175
overview 175
setup 177, 178
multicast group 181
multicast VLAN 187
Multiple Spanning Tree Instance, See MSTI 107
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, See MSTP. 105
Multiple STP, see MSTP 107
MVR 183
configuration 185
group configuration 187
network example 183
MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) 183

N

network management system (NMS) 280
NTP (RFC-1305) 67

P

password 47
administrator 289
PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) 241
ping, test connection 300
policy 160, 162
and classifier 160
and DiffServ 157
configuration 160
example 163
overview 157
rules 157, 158
viewing 161
policy configuration 162
port authentication 139
and RADIUS 193
IEEE802.1x 142, 143, 195, 197
MAC authentication 140
port based VLAN type 69
port cloning 325, 326
advanced settings 325, 326
basic settings 325, 326
port details 59
port isolation 87, 98
port mirroring 129, 130, 333
direction 130
egress 130
ingress 130
port redundancy 132
port security 145
address learning 147
limit MAC address learning 147
MAC address learning 145
overview 145
setup 146, 233
port setup 73
port status 58
port VLAN trunking 81
port-based VLAN 95
all connected 98
port isolation 98
settings wizard 98
ports
“standby” 132
diagnostics 300
mirroring 129
speed/duplex 74
power
voltage 65
power specification 329
power status 65
priority level 70
priority, queue assignment 70
product model 64
product registration 341
protocol based VLAN 91

and IEEE 802.1Q tagging 91
example 94
hexadecimal notation for protocols 90, 93
isolate traffic 91
priority 90, 93
PVID 80, 88
PVID (Priority Frame) 80

Q

QoS 333
and classifier 149
queue weight 166
queuing 165
SPQ 166
WFQ 166
WRR 166
queuing method 165, 168

R

RADIUS 192
advantages 192
and authentication 192
Network example 192
server 192
settings 193
setup 193
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol, See RSTP. 105
reboot
load configuration 273
reboot system 273
registration
product 341
related documentation 3
remote management 297
service 298
trusted computers 298
resetting 48, 272
to factory default settings 272
restoring configuration 48, 274
RFC 3164 301
RIP
configuration 239
direction 239
overview 239
version 239
RIP (Routing Information Protocol) 239
Round Robin Scheduling 166
routing domain 71, 261
routing protocols 334
routing table 323
RSTP 105
rubber feet 29

S

safety warnings 7
save configuration 48, 273
screen summary 44
Secure Shell See SSH
security 334
service access control 296
service port 297
Simple Network Management Protocol, see SNMP
SNMP 26, 280
agent 280
and MIB 280
authentication 287
communities 286
management model 280
manager 280
MIB 281
network components 280
object variables 280
protocol operations 281
security 287
setup 285
traps 288
version 3 and security 281
versions supported 280
SNMP traps 282
supported 282, 283, 284
Spanning Tree Protocol, See STP. 105
SPQ (Strict Priority Queuing) 166
SSH
encryption methods 292
how it works 291

implementation 292
SSH (Secure Shell) 290
SSL (Secure Socket Layer) 292
standby ports 132
static bindings 205
static MAC address 99
static MAC forwarding 89, 92, 99
static routes 237, 238
static trunking example 136
Static VLAN 84
static VLAN
control 86
tagging 86
status 42, 58
LED 38
link aggregation 133
port 58
port details 59
power 65
STP 114, 119
VLAN 83
VRRP 260
STP 105, 333
bridge ID 115
bridge priority 113
configuration 112, 116
designated bridge 106
forwarding delay 113
Hello BPDU 106
Hello Time 113, 115
how it works 106
Max Age 113, 115
path cost 106, 114
port priority 114
port state 107
root port 106
status 114, 119
terminology 105
vs loop guard 231
subnet based VLANs 88
and DHCP VLAN 90
and priority 88
configuration 89
switch lockout 48
switch reset 48
switch setup 69
switching 333
syntax conventions 5
syslog 209, 301
protocol 301
server setup 303
settings 302
setup 302
severity levels 301
system information 64
system log 300
system reboot 273

T

TACACS+ 192
setup 195
TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) 191
tagged VLAN 79
temperature 330
temperature indicator 65
time
current 67
time zone 67
Time (RFC-868) 67
time server 67
time service protocol 67
format 67
trademarks 339
transceiver
installation 35
removal 35
traps
destination 286
TRTCM
and bandwidth control 246
and DiffServ 246
color-aware mode 243
color-blind mode 243
setup 245
trunk group 131
trunking 131, 333
example 136
trusted ports
ARP inspection 209
DHCP snooping 206

Tunnel Protocol Attribute, and RADIUS 200
Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM) 242
Two Rate Three Color Marker, see TRTCM 242
Type of Service (ToS) 241

U

untrusted ports
  ARP inspection 209
  DHCP snooping 206
user profiles 192

V

Vendor Specific Attribute See VSA
ventilation holes 29
VID 72, 79, 83, 84, 171
  number of possible VIDs 79
  priority frame 79
VID (VLAN Identifier) 79
Virtual Router
  status 261
Virtual Router (VR) 259
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) 259
VLAN 68, 79, 333
  acceptable frame type 88
  automatic registration 80
  ID 79
  ingress filtering 88
  introduction 68
  number of VLANs 83
  port isolation 87
  port number 84
  port settings 87
  port-based VLAN 95
  port-based, all connected 98
  port-based, isolation 98
  port-based, wizard 98
  static VLAN 84
  status 83, 84
  tagged 79
  trunking 81, 88
  type 69, 82
VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) 68
VLAN number 72
VLAN stacking 169, 171
  configuration 173
  example 169
  frame format 171
  port roles 170, 174
  priority 171
VLAN, protocol based, See protocol based VLAN
VLAN, subnet based, See subnet based VLANs 88
VRID (Virtual Router ID) 260
VRRP 259
  advertisement interval 263
  authentication 262
  backup router 259
  configuration example 265
  Hello message 263
  how it works 259
  interface setup 261
  master router 259
  network example 259, 266
  parameters 263
  preempt mode 263, 264
  priority 263, 264
  status 260
  uplink gateway 264
  uplink status 261
  Virtual Router 259
  Virtual Router ID 264
  VRID 260
VSA 199

W

warranty 341
  note 341
web configurator 26, 41
  getting help 50
  home 42
  login 41
  logout 50
  navigation panel 43
  screen summary 44
weight, queuing 166
Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) 166
WFQ (Weighted Fair Queuing) 166

WRR (Weighted Round Robin Scheduling **166**

Z

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) **276**